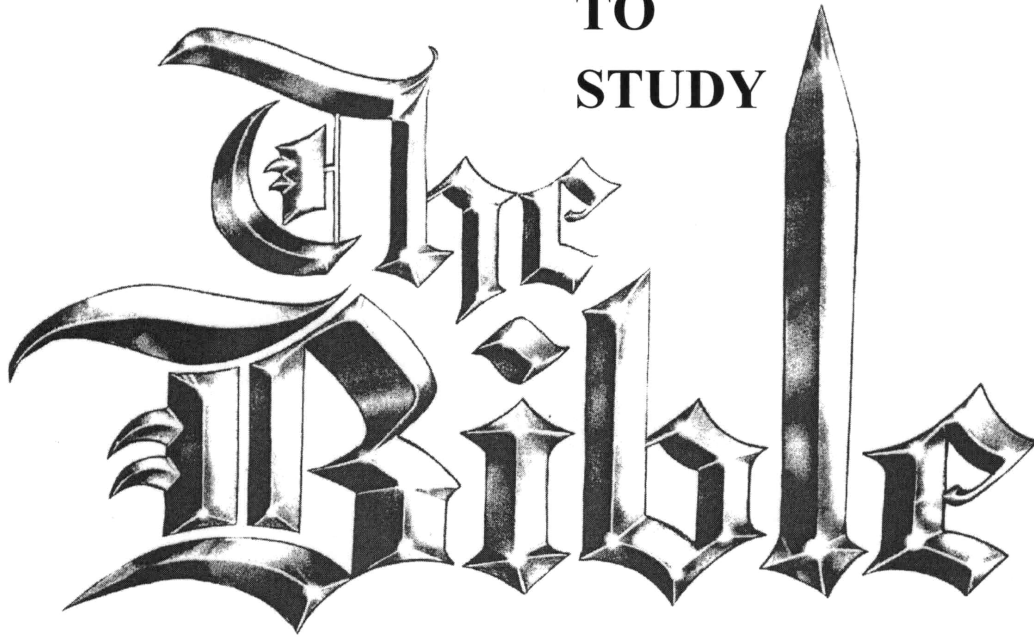


**HOW  
TO  
STUDY**



**The  
Bible**

**THE KEYS TO THE BIBLE**

**Robert D. Alexander  
Daystar Ministries**

**(816) 590-6315**



*To*

*Mel and Jean Sabaka,*

*my father and mother in the Lord,*

*with all my love.*



# HOW TO STUDY THE BIBLE

## THE KEYS TO THE BIBLE

<u>CHAPTER</u>			<u>PAGE</u>
	Preface		i
1	The Introduction	Psalm 119:97-104	1
2	The Teacher - The Holy Spirit	John 14:26; 16:13-14	13
3	The Rules	2Timothy 2:5	19
4	Rightly Dividing the Word of Truth	2Timothy 2: 15	29
5	The Theme of the Bible	2Samuel 19:10	37
6	Old Testament Survey	Luke 24:44	45
7	New Testament Survey	Acts 1:6	63
8	Which Version?	Psalm 12:6,7	91
9	Learning by Association	Romans 1 :20	117
10	The Two Most Important Words in the Bible	Hosea 12:10	129
11	The Bible is a Picture Book	John 5:45-47	143
12	Key Words and Phrases	Proverbs 30:5	153
13	Numerology	Revelation 13:18	193
14	Cross-Referencing	1Corinthians 2:13	215
15	The Conclusion	Psalm 1:1-3	231
<hr/>			
	Appendix A - The Rules of Bible Study		243
	Appendix B - Kingdom of God vs. Kingdom of Heaven		245
	Appendix C - Old Testament Survey		247
	Appendix D - New Testament Survey		249
	Appendix E - Key Words and Phrases		250



# PREFACE

This book is dedicated to the millions of unsung heroes of Bible Christianity: men and women who work 40 - 50 hours a week at a job, but through whom our Lord does His work in these last days; to the Philadelphian night fighters who recognize the end is near and our work is far from done.

Let me say from the start, this book will not be accepted in the arena of higher education. Its plainness of Bible truth, that puts the average child of God equal or ahead of all the great scholars of today who hide behind their degrees and teach the heresy of Greek and Hebrew being necessary to learn or know God's word, and who set themselves up as the final authority so you'll worship them and their knowledge, will not be tolerated. It will stick as a stench in their nostrils to read about God not being impressed with their IQ and their ability to go beneath the surface of an English translation to search out Greek and Hebrew “golden nuggets” that only they can find.

Let it be known that this book is based on the fundamental truth that the Bible is all we need; this book takes the position that the King James 1611 Authorized Version of the Textus Receptus is and shall always be the final, absolute, perfectly preserved, word of God for the church of Jesus Christ. It takes the position that the King James Version is superior to any original autographs, and will prove it whenever they can be produced.

The mark of the Laodicean church period, the time we now live in, is an absence of a final authority, with education becoming the final authority. I've enjoyed pastoring in the closing scenes of the last period of church history. It has been interesting for me to see the issue of these last times: **do we have the very words of God**, that every man, free or bond, rich or poor, educated or unlearned, can get his hands on, that are perfect and without error or need of correction? The answer is: **YES WE DO!**

You will see we use nothing but the Bible in our study; we take the Bible as we find it and do not correct it. We bring everything we have been taught, trained in and told in line with what it says, not adjusting the book to what we believe. We follow the biblical system God put into His Book to teach His people about Him; and we make no apologies for this.

I originally wrote this book for my people, to help them in the study of God's word; if it can be a blessing to you also, I am glad, for it is people like you to whom this work is dedicated, and especially my dear people whom God has given my wife and me the privilege to work with and minister to in our ministry in Kansas City. I dedicate this work to the common ordinary man and woman, understanding the cycle of history - that all history repeats itself - and that at the first coming of our Lord Jesus Christ it was the common ordinary man that saw who He was and understood His words. It was the educated intellectual crowd, the scribes, Pharisees, and other great religious leaders, who feared and hated Him, and finally moved the people to kill Him. And so today, at the time of the second coming, it will be the little guy who does the job while the professional religionists and big time pastors, evangelists and Bible scholars are busy getting rid of the greatest book this world has ever seen.

So let us be found faithful in these last moments of the church to stand and fight until our Commander in Chief returns, loving Him with all our hearts, minds and souls - even so, come quickly, Lord Jesus.

Robert D. Alexander  
September 2, 1987  
Pastor, Old Paths Baptist Church  
Kansas City, MO



# Chapter 1

## The Introduction

*O how love I thy law! it is my meditation all the day.  
Thou through thy commandments hast made me wiser than mine enemies:  
for they are ever with me.  
I have more understanding than all my teachers: for thy testimonies are  
my meditation.  
I understand more than the ancients, because I keep thy precepts.  
I have refrained my feet from every evil way, that I might keep thy word.  
I have not departed from thy judgments: for thou hast taught me.  
How sweet are thy words unto my taste! yea, sweeter than honey to my  
mouth!  
Through thy precepts I get understanding: therefore I hate every false  
way.*

**Psalm 119:97-104**

If you intend to accomplish anything for the Lord Jesus Christ, you must come to the place in your Christian life where you have a working knowledge of the word of God. It is just that simple. You cannot be the man or woman God wants you to be unless you put into your mind the things God wants you to have. You must understand that if you will ever do anything for God as a Christian, it can only be done through the book which reveals the God you serve, and His plan for your life.

When God gave us the Bible, He gave us the one **ABSOLUTE STANDARD** for the universe. Perhaps you are reading this and have never trusted the Lord Jesus Christ as your personal Saviour. Whether you understand anything about God, or

## Chapter 1 - The Introduction

have ever trusted Jesus Christ as your Saviour makes no difference; the Bible is still the book which runs your life and everything else in this universe. The more you read and study the Bible, the more you will become aware that the Bible is not just any book, **THE BIBLE IS GOD'S BOOK**. That will be the underlying theme of this work.

In this book, I will try to give you what has taken me about ten years to accumulate reading the Bible through an average of four or five times per year. This is an attempt to give you a comprehensive study of the word of God in capsule form. My goal in writing this book is simply to establish the “**ground rules**” for studying the Bible.

I don't know how the idea ever got started that understanding the Bible is difficult. The Bible is really a very simple book. Now I will admit there are some passages which are difficult to place, especially in the Old Testament. Passages such as Zechariah 6, where it talks about four horses, are hard to comprehend fully. I can place it to a small degree, but I don't know specifically what God is saying. I have never known anyone who could prove conclusively the exact identity of Melchizedek in Genesis 14. You must realize before we go any further, you will **NEVER** understand **ALL** of the Bible.

Years ago, a famous American preacher named Sam Jones said, “If I understood all of the Bible, it would only prove that whoever wrote it wasn't any smarter than I am.” That is a very profound statement. Man's most brilliant minds have struggled with the Bible for centuries, and still its content has never been exhausted. That is proof positive that the author of the Bible is smarter than any man who ever lived.

It is not my purpose in writing this book to get you to understand everything you read in the Bible. Instead, my goal is for you to be able to understand the historical, doctrinal, and inspirational **CONTEXT** of at least ninety-five percent of the Bible. This is essential before you can ever enjoy a victorious life in the Lord Jesus Christ.

In addition, I want to give you purpose and direction in your study of the word of God. Many times we fall into the trap of reading the Bible because we think that is what we are supposed to do. We think the answer to everything is to simply read the Bible. Someone says, “I've got problems.”

We then deliver our band-aid cure all: “Read the Bible”.

“I have problems in my marriage.”  
“Well, pray about it and read the Bible.”  
“I’m having problems at work.”  
“Well, read the Bible.”

We use that as a cop-out. Just **reading** the Bible won't solve your problems. What you must do is learn how to apply the Bible to your life. Only then will you solve those problems.

This is what I want to accomplish with this book. I want to bring you to the place where you can begin to apply Biblical principles to your life and make the Bible work for you. This can only be accomplished as you make the Bible the number one priority in your life.

It's great to read the Bible, but there must be some purpose and direction in what you are reading. I am sure that after you are finished with this book, you will understand that purpose and direction much better.

Now before I can begin to build these principles in your life, it will be necessary to tear down some of the false ideas you may have been taught in the past. I wish I didn't have to do this. It would be so much easier to just charge right ahead with all of the great lessons of Bible study God has taught me, but it won't work that way. When Jeremiah was commissioned by God to preach, he was told to root out, pull down, destroy, and throw down **BEFORE** he could build and plant (Jeremiah 1:10). What I am about to say may go contrary to the mainstream of Christian education, but in all Christian love, I pray the Holy Spirit will bear witness to its truth.

In Christianity today, we are taught that the Bible is a hard book we cannot understand. The approach of higher education is to get you to think the Bible is a mystical book you have to spend years and years and a small fortune to learn. A “religion” teacher told me one time he was very suspicious of anyone who claimed to understand the book of Revelation. (I am very suspicious of anyone who DOESN'T understand Revelation!)

That is the kind of idealism we have in America today in Christian circles. You will learn very quickly once you get into the word of God that the mentality of higher Christian education in America is off the wall. Most Bible Colleges offer a

## Chapter 1 - The Introduction

course on “Biblical Criticism”. I would like someone to show me one verse in the Bible giving anyone permission to criticize the word of God. Who gave anyone authority to say this doesn't belong here and that doesn't belong there? If the Bible is God's word (and it is!) then it stands on its own, with no help from any man.

Please don't misunderstand me - I am not against Bible Colleges; I believe we misuse them. I believe the church has failed in the job it was called by God to do, which is to perfect the saints. That is why we try to **send** young people to Bible College to learn the word of God. There isn't one verse in either Testament which says you should send your kids anywhere to learn the in Bible. They should learn it in the local church where God has put them.

Now there is nothing wrong with going to Bible College. If God calls you to go, then go. You might go if God has called you to preach or to the mission field, and you want to submit yourself to the program, or to learn how to build a church; but don't go to Bible College to learn the Bible. The place to learn the word of God is in your local church, and if they won't teach it to you, get out of there and find a church that will!

Most Bible Colleges don't teach the Bible; instead they teach a system of terms. They try to enroll you into what I call the MSU, or the Mystical Scholar's Union. Their courses are filled with subjects and terms like: Angelology - (The study of angels), Anthropology - (The study of man), Soteriology - (The study of salvation), Christology - (The study of Jesus), Ecclesiology - (The study of the church), etc, etc...

Something about this bothers me. I've read the New Testament dozens of times, yet I have never seen Paul, or Peter, or John, or Jesus, or anyone use those terms. In other words, what you get from Bible Colleges are a set of non-biblical phrases and terms which were never used by anyone in the Bible. Now let me ask you a question: why would anyone want to spend \$10,000 a year to learn to talk like no one ever talked in the Bible? When you think about that, doesn't it bother you? It always bothered me!

Now I don't fight Bible Colleges. I think they have their place. But I have seen some of the fine little fellows they have turned out over the years. They just don't get the job done. Occasionally a young man from a Bible College will come to our church and want us to give him a job or help him find a church somewhere. Before I commit myself to any assistance, I ask him ten questions about the Bible.

## Chapter 1 - The Introduction

I really don't care how he answers the questions; what I am looking for is if he knows what he believes, or if he has just memorized what his teachers told him. This tells me if he has really studied the Bible, or if he just has a system of terms in his mind.

I have done this now for about eight years, and I have not had anyone from a Bible College answer more than two of the questions, and those were not satisfactory answers. Yet I could ask almost anyone who has been in my ministry for more than two years, and they could answer them in depth from the Bible, and expound on each one for about an hour.

What I am trying to get across is this: what you learn at the average Bible College is a technical language that identifies you as a preacher. You will not learn the Bible.

Let me illustrate. Suppose I came to you and said, "I will charge you \$1000 to teach you the Bible." Suppose you agreed, paid me the \$1000, and we sat down to study.

I could begin by saying, "I'm going to discuss the subject of Angelology in the Bible." You would think, "Oooh! He uses big words. He must know something special."

Or I could say, "We're going to expound the riches of Ecclesiology."

You would be impressed, I could get away with charging \$1000 talking that way.

If I said, however; "Let's talk about the church", you would say, "Give me my money back. You don't know anything."

The only difference is the terminology, it has nothing to do with knowledge of the word of God.

In the book of Revelation, you will find in the early church a system called the Nicolaitans. These were a group of people who set a "priest class" over the common man. It was a lot like our situation today in modern Christianity. For example, because I know the Bible, and could teach you things about it you don't know, then under the Nicolaitan system, I would be on a higher spiritual level than you. That mentality sets a "priest class" over the believers. Under that system, the

## Chapter 1 - The Introduction

guy in charge can give the impression he is smarter than you primarily because he can go into some mystical language and explain words. If you pointed out something the Bible said, he could answer, “Well, yes, my child, but in the original language it doesn't mean that, and the clearer rendering of the word should be this...”

Do you see what he has done? He now has everything in his corner because he can read a language you can't. He has the deck stacked in his favor because you now have to come to him to get what the Bible says.

This was the major problem in the Dark Ages, and the reason so many people were burned at the stake. For centuries in Europe, it was a crime punishable by death to have the scriptures in your own tongue. In every university in Europe during this period, the only languages allowed in classrooms were Greek, Hebrew, or Latin. If anyone spoke a different language, they had to learn one of those three languages before they could even go to school. This suppressed the common man to the level of serfs, because they had absolutely no access to the word of God, or to any basic education.

The “Church”, through the Nicolaitan system, had installed their own “priest class” as the final authority for all truth, because they were the only ones with access to the mystical languages which most people did not speak.

Martin Luther broke from this tradition and began the reformation by committing perhaps one of the most heinous “crimes” in history.

He began teaching his students in their common tongue: German. He completely removed the mystical barrier which had existed for one thousand years. Thousands before and after Martin Luther paid the price with their blood for attempting the same thing. John Huss was burned at the stake for translating the Bible into the common language of his day. John Wycliffe's body was exhumed and burned for the same “crime”. The list is endless. A detailed accounting of this is made in the classic Foxe's Book of Martyrs, which should be read for more information.

The exact same situation prevails today. The only difference is that instead of paying the price with your blood, you are ridiculed and harassed for believing you have the infallible words of God in your own language. Most universities, especially the “Christian” ones, make you believe that without a thorough

knowledge of Greek and Hebrew, you cannot possibly understand the word of God. That system and mentality exalts language teachers to a place of preeminence, and sets them over the common man as an authority on the “true meaning” of the word of God.

I want to establish a fact up front in this book. **You can have the exact infallible words of God In your language if you want them. They are available.** As you read further in this book, this will become more apparent to you. I am no better than you; I just believe what God said. If you will read Revelation 2:6 and Revelation 2:15, the Bible clearly says God HATES the doctrine of the Nicolaitans. I don't want to be found promoting something God hates.

Now please don't misunderstand me. I don't have a problem with someone using Greek or Hebrew on two conditions: first, never correct a word in any language by using another language: second, don't ever think someone is naturally superior in their understanding of the word of God simply because they know other languages, As long as you keep these points perfectly clear, there is nothing wrong with using other languages to amplify or expound a text. There may be some merit to knowing the original languages, but after reading the English Bible through over fifty times, I still don't have it mastered. I have enough trouble with English, and until I am comfortable with my knowledge of the English Bible, I am not going to waste time worrying about a language I can't speak. Of course, that time will probably never come.

I know what I am saying goes against the grain of everything you may have been taught. But I am willing to sit down with any Greek or Hebrew professor in this country and find out if his intellect or understanding of languages gives him a superior understanding of the word of God. You get intimidated when someone starts talking about the original languages. You think that because he has a different vocabulary than you, he knows more than you. That's not necessarily true. As a result, you allow that to destroy your zeal for the word of God. You think, “Since I don't understand Greek or Hebrew, I can't understand the Bible anyway, so why bother.” If the god of the unsaved world is humanism, which it is, then the god of the saved world is **education**.

Now, at the same time, I need to clarify myself so you don't think I am anti-education; I am not. I think you need to learn everything you can possibly learn. Every day in your life should be a learning process. If you didn't have a basic education, you couldn't read the word of God. What I am saying is this: you must

## Chapter 1 - The Introduction

be very careful of education, because when you get too much, it leads to pride.

Do you know the original problem the Devil had in Ezekiel 28 and Isaiah 14? It was pride. I don't care how good a man may be, how much he prays, tithes, reads his Bible, or wins souls; he still has an old sin nature. That old sin nature in a saved person is just as susceptible to sin as any drunken bum on skid row: and pride is the chief sin, listed first in God's hate list in Proverbs 6:16.

You will find the MSU in every area of life. When you go to a doctor, and he tells you what is wrong, he will tell you in such a way that you must say, "Thank you, doctor. Now can you explain that to me in English?" He uses terminology that is unfamiliar to you. Have you ever tried to read a prescription or your own medical chart in the hospital? It is impossible. Every part of the human anatomy has a technical Latin name. This sets the profession apart so you, as a common man, cannot figure out what is going on. When the doctor talks about your fibula, you think he is calling you a liar. When he talks about your cranium, you think he is talking about the construction site downtown. One of the primary reasons this is done is so those who want to enter the profession have to spend the time and money, and come to them to get the knowledge.

Lawyers are the same way. When a lawyer talks about a writ of habeas corpus, you think he is referring to a dead body in the street. They use terms we are not familiar with.

Dentists refer to upper and lower bicuspid or molars. If he says, "Your bicuspid are infested, and your molars are abscessed", he can charge a lot of money. If he were to say, "Your big teeth have holes in them, and your little teeth have crud on them", you wouldn't pay him as much. By spending the time and money to learn the language, he has entered the Dentists MSU and can get away with talking like that.

Mechanics are the same. When they talk about muffler bearings, cam shafts, or cold chill retainer springs, they can confuse the average person. Everyone knows how some mechanics (not all of them, of course) like to try to take advantage of women; but when they run into a woman who knows something about a car, immediately their advantage is taken away, and they can't charge as much. (The love of money is the root of all evil.)



Higher Christian education in America does the same thing. They go into a system of terms and different languages so the person being taught has to view the teacher as some kind of “god” who helps the poor little dears understand the Bible. As far as a medical doctor is concerned, that's fine. What you must understand is those things may be somewhat necessary in the secular world, but they don't work when it comes to the Bible.

**The word of God is not something God gave  
only to those with an education.**

The educated people missed His first coming. The ones who didn't miss it were the tent makers, tax collectors, harlots and fishermen, the blind, the halt, and the lame; in other words, the common, ordinary man. They knew who He was.

So don't get hung up on big words. Just because you own a piano does not make you a musician; likewise, just because you know some big words doesn't mean you know the Bible.

One of the most amazing facts about the Bible is that over seventy-five percent of the words in it (excluding the proper names) are one syllable words. When John describes salvation in **1John 5:12**, he says:

***“He that hath the Son hath life;  
and he that hath not  
the Son of God hath not life.”***

Nineteen words - every one of them ONE SYLLABLE.

When Jesus Christ appealed to men to believe on him, he said things like:

“I am the bread of life.” (John 6:35)

“I am the light of the world.” (John 8:12)

“I am the door.” (John 10:9)

“I am the good shepherd.” (John 10:14)

“I am the way, the truth, and the life.” (John 14:6)

“I am the true vine.” (John 15:1)

Almost every word is ONE syllable. The Bible is very easy to understand when you consider that. Mark Twain, a notable atheist, once said, “It's not the things in the Bible I don't understand that bother me; it's the things I do understand.” It's

## Chapter 1 - The Introduction

not often we are forced to say AMEN to an atheist!

When God wrote the Bible, He wrote a book so basic and simple any idiot in this world could understand it. It is essential to approach the word of God with this in mind, because if you come to God's book with the idea you are a scholar, you will get nothing out of it. When God refers to His people, do you know what He likens them to? He likens them to children. If you want to get anything from God your Father, you must come like a child. A child comes with blind faith, and will believe anything you say. If I told my two girls the moon was made of green cheese, they would believe me. In fact, they would probably want to buy some crackers and go up there for a snack! That is the kind of faith they have in me, and it is the kind of faith you should have in God. In other words, you should believe EVERYTHING God says without question, no matter how ridiculous it may sound.

The bottom line is this: if you want to learn the Bible, you must **LOVE** the Bible. My goal in writing this book is to show you why I love it so much, and my prayer is that this work will kindle in you the same love for the word of God expressed by David in Psalm 119, the longest chapter in the Bible. If that book really means more to you than anything else in this world, if you would rather spend time in the Bible than doing anything else in this world, then you will learn the Bible in time. It makes no difference how much time you study or read the Bible, if the word of God is not the most precious thing you have ever had in your life, you will never learn it like you should. Understand one thing, if nothing else:

**The primary key to learning the Bible  
is not your Intelligence.  
It is your ATTITUDE OF HEART!**

In the Bible, there are several prayers which teach you how to study the word of God. Some of you reading this have been studying the Bible, or want to study the Bible, and you have been a Christian for many years. Others may be new Christians. Still I doubt if more than just a handful of people ever even bother to pray before they read the Bible. I wonder how many people, before they sit down to read the Bible, take about fifteen minutes to prepare their heart, life and body in prayer before they open the word of God. Most Christians don't even spend fifteen minutes a day in the Bible, let alone fifteen minutes in prayer to prepare

## Chapter 1 - The Introduction

themselves to receive God's direction and blessing. Instead, they flop down with the Bible, flip a couple of pages while the TV is on, and then they wonder why they can't learn the Bible. The time you spend studying the word of God should be the most precious time in your life: a time when you and God get alone with no outside interference: just you and Him having a good time in His word.

Before you go any further, I challenge you to prepare your heart to receive a blessing from God. I challenge you to put this book down and pick up the precious word of God and read the 119<sup>th</sup> Psalm. It is the greatest chapter in the entire Bible describing a man's love for the word of God. Read it slowly and prayerfully, paying attention to every word. Put yourself in David's place, and just get alone with God for the next few minutes - just you and Him - and let Him speak to you. Let King David, a man after God's own heart, show you how to love the word of God. Without that type of love for the Bible, all your studies are in vain.

## Chapter 1 - The Introduction

## Chapter 2

### The Teacher - The Holy Spirit

*“But the Comforter, which is the Holy Ghost, whom the Father will send in my name, he shall teach you all things, and bring all things to your remembrance, whatsoever I have said unto you.”*

*“Howbeit when he, the Spirit of truth, is come, he will guide you into all truth: for he shall not speak of himself; but whatsoever he shall hear, that shall he speak: and he will shew you things to come.*

*He shall glorify me: for he shall receive of mine, and shall shew it unto you.”*

**John 14:26,16:13-14**

As we begin this chapter, we begin main portion of this study, but first it will be necessary to lay some ground work. By the time you are finished with this book, you will have all the tools you need to understand the Bible. Remember, however, you will never understand it all, but as you read the word of God, more and more passages will fit into place. Now let's develop some basic things about the Bible.

Let's begin in John 14. You might note that John 14 is the greatest chapter in the Bible dealing with the Holy Spirit of God. (You don't have to pay extra for that, it's included in the \$1000 we talked about earlier.) **John 14:15-26** says:

**15** *If ye love me, keep my commandments.*

**16** *And I will pray the Father, and he shall give you another Comforter, that he may abide with you for ever;*

Chapter 2 - The Teacher - The Holy Spirit

**17** *Even the Spirit of truth; whom the world cannot receive, because it seeth him not, neither knoweth him: but ye know him; for he dwelleth with you, and shall be in you.*

**18** *I will not leave you comfortless: I will come to you.*

**19** *Yet a little while, and the world seeth me no more; but ye see me: because I live, ye shall live also.*

**20** *At that day ye shall know that I am in my Father, and ye in me, and I in you.*

**21** *He that hath my commandments, and keepeth them, he it is that loveth me: and he that loveth me shall be loved of my Father, and I will love him, and will manifest myself to him.*

**22** *Judas saith unto him, not Iscariot, Lord, how is it that thou wilt manifest thyself unto us, and not unto the world?*

**23** *Jesus answered and said unto him, If a man love me, he will keep my words: and my Father will love him, and we will come unto him, and make our abode with him.*

**24** *He that loveth me not keepeth not my sayings: and the word which ye hear is not mine, but the Father's which sent me.*

**25** *These things have I spoken unto you, being yet present with you.*

**26** *But the Comforter, which is the Holy Ghost, whom the Father will send in my name, he shall teach you all things, and bring all things to your remembrance, whatsoever I have said unto you.*

Verse 26 defines the attribute of the Holy Spirit as a teacher. This is very important. The Bible says it is the Holy Spirit of God who teaches us all things. Therefore, your learning the Bible is not based on your aptitude, but rather on your altitude-how high you are with God. You know from your own experience that it is impossible to teach someone who does not want to learn. A person with a stubborn, rebellious, know-it-all attitude will never learn anything. It is no different with you and God. The closer you become to the Holy Spirit of God, the easier it is for him to teach you; the more you insist on going your own way, the harder it becomes to learn from Him. John 14:26 says the Holy Spirit will teach you ALL things. You must realize that if you are going to learn anything at all, it won't come from me, or any college professor, or any commentary. God can use these instruments, but the ultimate truth will come from the Holy Spirit of God as he takes God's words and imparts them into your heart.

Now let's look at another passage, **John 16:13-14**:

*Howbeit when he, the Spirit of truth, is come, he will guide you into all truth: for he shall not speak of himself; but whatsoever he shall hear, that shall he speak: and he will shew you things to come. He shall glorify me: for he shall receive of mine, and shall shew it unto you.*

The Bible says in verse 13, when “the Spirit of truth is come, he will guide you into all truth.” ALL TRUTH-no error in it. John says it is the Holy Spirit of God who will teach us and who will guide us into all truth; so we have to find a definition of truth. In John 17:17 the Lord Jesus Christ said:

**Sanctify them through thy truth:  
THY WORD IS TRUTH.**

The Bible defines truth as “**THY WORD.**” The Holy Spirit of God will take the word of God and lead and guide you into all truth through His book.

Now let's watch the Holy Spirit at work in Luke 24, beginning with verse 44. Jesus Christ is speaking:

*And he said unto them, These are the words which I spake unto you, while I was yet with you, that all things must be fulfilled, which were written in the law of Moses, and in the prophets, and in the psalms, concerning me.*

In this passage, the Lord Jesus Christ is talking to his eleven disciples (Judas is dead), and he is explaining to them how he has fulfilled all of the Old Testament prophecies concerning the Messiah. In other words, **He is teaching them the Bible.** Think about that for a minute! Here are eleven men being taught the Bible in a personal, direct session by God manifest in the flesh; but it is not enough. Look at verse 45:

*Then opened he their understanding, that they might understand the scriptures.*

## Chapter 2 - The Teacher - The Holy Spirit

There is the Holy Spirit of God at work in their lives, opening their understanding and teaching them the word of God. It is the same with you: the Holy Spirit must open your understanding or you will never learn the Bible. The understanding you get from the Holy Spirit of God is on the basis of your ATTITUDE toward the Bible and the Lord Jesus Christ. There is a classic example of this in Luke 23. Watch how the Lord Jesus Christ responds to Herod. Jesus has just been arrested and questioned by Pilate. Pilate could not find fault in Him, but when he discovered Jesus was a Galilean, he tried to pass the buck to Herod.

***And when Herod saw Jesus, he was exceeding glad: for he was desirous to see him of a long season, because he had heard many things of him; and he hoped to have seen some miracle done by him. Then he questioned with him in many words; but he answered him nothing.***

**Luke 23:8-9**

Notice how Jesus refused to answer Herod. All Herod was interested in was “some miracle” - he didn't care about the truth. Verse 9 says Herod questioned Jesus at length. I can imagine some of the questions:

- (1) Where did Cain get his wife?
- (2) How did Noah get all those animals on the boat?
- (3) How do you know the Bible is the word of God?
- (4) How do you know there's a God?

Herod had a wicked heart. He cared nothing for the truth of God, so God cared nothing for him, and Jesus wouldn't even bother to take the time to answer his questions. The same holds true today for anyone who approaches the Bible with a scholarly, egotistical attitude, whether they be saved or lost.

Now, I want to show you how important it is to understand the things I have just talked to you about. Most people think the Bible is just another book, just a collection of writings some people wrote sometime that was just put together. They don't really understand the true weight of what is contained in the Bible. It's a shame, but most people - even Christians - don't really care how much time they spend in the word of God as long as they have one on their coffee table. They have no concept of the magnitude of the book God gave us.

Let's examine what the apostle John has written in the last chapter in John, Chapter 21. Let me show you one more time how important it is to understand why the Bible should be the number one priority in your life before we go any



further. I have already laid the groundwork to show you it is the Holy Spirit of God who teaches you. I have already shown you it is your relationship to the Holy Spirit of God as you pay attention to what the Bible says in your own life that determines what you will learn. Now watch what **John 21:24-25** says:

***This is the disciple which testifieth of these things, and wrote these things: and we know that his testimony is true.***

***And there are also many other things which Jesus did, the which, if they should be written every one, I suppose that even the world itself could not contain the books that should be written. Amen.***

Now, I don't know what you know about the Bible, but verse 25 is a blockbuster. That verse says if **all** the things Jesus said and did were put together in books, there wouldn't be enough room in the **WHOLE WORLD** to contain them. If that is true, and it is, then the book God gave us must be the exact things he wants us to have for the day and age we live in. People will talk about revelations from God other than the Bible - there are none! It is all contained in **ONE BOOK**, and **every word is Important**.

John 21:25 says Jesus Christ did and said a lot of things which are not recorded in the Bible. We have the writings of Paul, but Paul certainly wrote more than just the thirteen or fourteen letters in the New Testament which bear his name. God, chose to record exactly what is there for a reason and for a distinct purpose.

Sometimes when we study the Bible, we think there are a few places which really don't mean much. Wrong! God took everything He said, and everything He did, in the Old Testament and the New Testament, and hand-picked **EXACTLY** what he wanted us to have **WORD BY WORD**. The only safe way to approach the Bible is with the attitude that every word is the most important word in existence. You might ask, "Why should we look at it that way?" Because it is the way God looks at it. John 21:25 proves that.

I didn't see that truth until I had read the book of John about fifty times. When God showed me that, I looked at it, and I just couldn't believe it. That one truth gave me a whole different perspective about the Bible. Suddenly, every word became important, because I realized it was the exact word God picked out of everything else he said, and placed it **exactly** where he wanted it. As I read about all the miracles the Lord Jesus Christ did, I would think about how many others he

## Chapter 2 - The Teacher - The Holy Spirit

must have done: yet God hand-picked just a few miracles and recorded them for a reason. Now, when I read about those miracles. I see pictures of all kinds of things God wants to show me.

In this chapter, all I have hoped to accomplish is to give you a basic understanding of how the Holy Spirit of God teaches you the Bible. It is not automatic every time you simply open the Bible: there is a condition placed on His teaching you. That condition is **heart belief** in everything you read. The Bible is really a very easy book to understand, but very difficult to **believe**. The only thing you have to do to unlock the riches of the word of God is just **believe** what you read. It is that simple.

After His resurrection, the Lord Jesus Christ met two of His disciples on the road to Emmaus. They did not know who He was. After talking with them for a while, they began “crying on His shoulder” about the Messiah being crucified. They felt something was wrong because the women could not find His body and were telling everyone He was alive. Of course, they didn't believe He was risen; they were “skeptical”. They were going to “reserve judgment until they could logically evaluate all of the scientific data and come up with a rational explanation.”

Look at what Jesus said to them in Luke 24:25:

***Then he said unto them, O fools, and slow of heart to believe all that the prophets have spoken.***

Notice, he didn't say they were slow of mind, but slow of HEART. He did not say they needed to go to Bible College so they could appreciate the “true rendering” of the original languages and thus be able to expound the “fullest meaning” of the text. He said they were SLOW OF HEART TO BELIEVE.

If you ever intend to get the truth from the Bible, then don't make the same mistake they made. Just BELIEVE what you read and let the Holy Spirit lead and guide you into all truth.

# Chapter 3

## The Rules

*And if a man also strive for masteries, yet is he not crowned, except he strive lawfully.* **2Timothy 2:5**

In everything you encounter in life, there are certain rules to follow: in business, in sports, your legal requirements as a citizen, etc., etc. When you violate these rules, you pay the consequences. If you break the rules at work, you get reprimanded or fired; athletes are penalized or disqualified; lawbreakers are fined or jailed. It is the same with the Bible. The old expression “All's fair in love and war” may apply to those areas, but they don't count with the word of God. The Bible has specific guidelines to follow in study, and if they are violated, the reader will get confused and deceived, and be in danger of getting messed up in bad doctrine. The Bible says in **2Timothy 3:16**:

*All scripture is given by inspiration of God, and is profitable for doctrine, for reproof, for correction, for instruction in righteousness.*

Notice the first thing the Bible is for: DOCTRINE. Every verse in the Bible has a specific teaching, and that specific teaching teaches only ONE thing. There are many applications to be made with the Bible, but only ONE specific doctrinal teaching. I will discuss this in detail later. The doctrinal teaching of the Bible is the spark plug which makes the Bible come alive. Without it, anyone can teach anything they want and force the Bible to contradict and lie in almost every verse. In this chapter, I will briefly detail the rules of Bible study; which, if you understand them properly and remember them, will prevent you from being deceived by false doctrine. These things must become second nature to you about

## Chapter 3 - The Rules

the Bible. You must put them in your mind, not just on paper, so you never forget them. In the major material of this book, I will make reference to these points continually. Somewhere in the course of this book, I will give you examples in the Bible of each one. Let's come through them one by one and I will show you how they work.

**RULE #1:**  
**Before you ask what a verse means, determine the CONTEXT.**

The very first question you must ask yourself is: “What is the context?” Every cult on the face of this earth which uses the Bible takes verses out of context to try to prove their point. For example, if someone is teaching a Christian can lose his salvation, they will take a verse from, Hebrews 3, or 6, or Matthew 24, or 25, and lift it out of its doctrinal context to try to prove their point. Peter specifically warned us about this in **2Peter 3:15-16** when he said:

*And account that the longsuffering of our Lord is salvation; even as our beloved brother Paul also according to the wisdom given unto him hath written unto you;*

*As also in all his epistles, speaking in them of these things; in which are some things hard to be understood, which they that are unlearned and unstable WREST [take out of context], as they do also the other scriptures, unto their own destruction.*

When you encounter a passage you don't understand, back up a few verses, or read the entire chapter, and try to determine the context. Almost every chapter in the Bible has a specific context doctrinally, and it is usually detailed in the first two or three verses, many times in the very first verse. Every book of the Bible' also has a specific doctrinal context, which I will cover in later chapters.

The next rule goes along with determining the context.

**RULE #2:**

**The Bible is written to three groups of people: Jews, Gentiles, and the Church.**

There are three distinctly different groups of people addressed in the Bible. That is why you never base a specific church doctrine solely on verses in Matthew, Mark, Luke or John. Those books are not written to the Church doctrinally because the church is not in effect until after those events take place. There are no “Christians” in the four gospels. The first time the word “Christian” appears in the Bible is in Acts 11.

Why look for them in Matthew, Mark, Luke, or John? Now, you can find “saved” people, please don't misunderstand me; but they are not Christians. The Bible says in Hebrews 9:16-17 that a testament is not in effect until the DEATH of the testator. This doesn't take place until the very end of the gospels. Until this time, doctrinally, the Old Testament is still in effect, even though the books are actually contained in the New Testament. I know that is hard to comprehend, but look at the verses I quoted in Hebrews and then write me and tell me differently.

**RULE #3:**

**The Bible has proper divisions, and you must put those divisions in the right place.**

In 2Timothy, Paul is writing to Timothy and giving him instructions to prepare him for the ministry. As a result, he is teaching him how to study the Bible. Observe what he says in **2Timothy 2:15**:

***Study to show thyself approved unto God, a workman that needeth not to be ashamed, rightly dividing the word of truth.***

## Chapter 3 - The Rules

Every heretic in the world gets his doctrine from wrongly dividing the word of truth. Every false teaching in existence is a Bible truth which has been misplaced and misapplied. I will go into detail in a future chapter on this subject because it is of such grave importance.

### **RULE #4:**

**All scripture has three applications:  
Doctrinal, Historical and Inspirational.**

I mentioned this briefly in the opening statements of this chapter. Understand, the Bible has many “applications”, but those applications will fit into three areas: Doctrinal, Historical, and Inspirational. The **doctrinal application** is the specific teaching. Some people have referred to this also as the prophetic application. It is true that most of the doctrinal applications in the Bible are yet future. Two-thirds of the Old Testament prophecies of the coming of the Messiah are yet to be fulfilled. Yet these prophecies are a specific teaching on future events. You can call it whatever you wish, but for the purposes of this book we will refer to these as doctrinal applications.

The **historical application** is exactly what it says. Every verse of scripture actually took place in history. The Bible is one hundred percent historically accurate.

Inspirationally, the Bible has a multitude of possible applications. These include the “**personal application**” where you can take your name and write it in the passage as if it were written directly to you. 2Samuel 9 is a classic example of how a personal application can be made specifically to you of the grace of God in salvation when Mephibosheth comes to live in the king's palace. In a later chapter, we will go into much greater detail in explaining how these three applications work.

### **RULE #5:**

**God chooses the exact words he wants  
to use and the events recorded to show  
you something.**

This was explained in detail in chapter two from **John 21:24-25**.

**RULE #6:**

**God has three distinct plans, revealed in His word: He has a plan for the universe, for the earth, and for your life.**

In Hebrews 1 and Hebrews 11, the Bible, in speaking of the physical creation, says the WORLDS (plural) were framed by the word of God. There is more than one world which fits into God's plan for the universe. God had a reason for making the universe: He wouldn't do something that big without a purpose!

Of course, this world is in the universe, and as such, God's plan for the universe includes the earth.

Your life is confined to this earth until you die. As a Christian, you can never really find out what God wants you to do with your life without at least a basic concept of God's plan for the universe and earth, because all three plans are intricately related. I will give you a basic start on these three plans later.

**RULE #7:**

**The invisible things of God can be seen by studying the things God made.**

This truth is set forth in Romans 1:20. I have devoted an entire chapter to this subject because of its enormous importance.

**RULE #8:**

**The Bible is of no private interpretation.  
All “interpretations” must be done by  
comparing scripture with scripture.**

The idea in so-called “Bible studies” today is to get a bunch of people together for a “round table discussion”. Those aren't Bible studies, they are spiritual smorgasbords. The idea is to sit around with coffee and doughnuts while each person uses his favorite “version” of the Bible so no one can follow each other. Someone will pick a chapter, read it, and say, “Now, let's study the Bible. Harry, why don't you take a few minutes, and tell us what you think it means.” After Harry is done, “Lucille, it's your turn. What does it mean to you?” After four or five opinions of what someone, who may or may not be saved THINKS the Bible means, all you have, under the guise of a Bible study, is four or five private interpretations, none of which mean anything at all when it comes to what the Bible SAYS. The Bible only SAYS one thing, and it doesn't matter what anyone thinks about it. All but eight people in Noah's day thought the rain wouldn't come; it did. Every religious teacher of Christ's day didn't think Jerusalem would be destroyed, but it was burnt to the ground in 70 A.D.

Don't ever make the mistake of thinking you are studying the Bible in one of those messes. I wouldn't waste five minutes with one. You could accomplish a lot more by going out and shooting a squirrel...and learn a lot more about God in the process.

Always remember a basic law of existence that is absolute:

***...Let God be true and every man a liar.***

**Romans 3:4**

How many times have you heard that old line, “Well, that's just your interpretation”. If there is anything that lights my fuse, it's that old cop-out. I want to hit the next guy who says it, but of course I can't and won't. My interpretation isn't worth two cents, and neither is yours. The Bible is its own dictionary and its own commentary by comparing scripture with scripture. **2Peter 1:20** says:

***Knowing this first, that no prophecy of the scripture is of any private interpretation.***



Did you see that clearly? NO PRIVATE INTERPRETATIONS are allowed. I quoted that verse to someone once who said, “Well, that is just your interpretation of that verse.” How could anything be more ridiculous? That response is so ridiculous it doesn't even merit a comment.

**RULE #9:**

**The INDIVIDUAL WORDS in the Bible are the key to the Bible.**

This will be the subject of the longest and most crucial chapter in this book on "Key Words".

**RULE #10:**

**Always give the Bible the benefit of the doubt.**

Always operate under the belief that the Bible is innocent until PROVEN guilty. Perhaps the most classic excuse for people to disobey the word of God is their insistence that it is “full of contradictions”. The Bible does not contradict itself. There was a man in New York years ago who had a standing public offer of \$10,000 to anyone who could prove conclusively in court a contradiction in the King James Bible. He was taken to court eight times, and won each case. Contradictions exist only in the mind of the unbelieving reader. In the next chapter titled, “Rightly Dividing the Word of Truth”, I will give you some principles to help you reconcile these so-called “contradictions” biblically, without having to twist the scriptures to do it.

**RULE #11:**

**Never forget the consistency of the Bible.**

The rule of consistency will be interwoven throughout this book, and you will see it clearly in the following chapters. The Bible is the most consistent book on the face of the earth. That is why the next point is so important.

**RULE #12:**  
**Remember the “Law of First Mention”.**

When a word, or doctrine, or any other thing is found for the first time; it is a very important key. The first mention usually defines something for the rest of the Bible. As a result, pay particular attention to this rule in the books of Genesis, Job, and Matthew.

Genesis is the “book of beginnings,” the first book in the Bible. Every major doctrine in the Bible can be found in the first twelve chapters of Genesis. Job is the oldest book in the Bible chronologically. It was written around Abraham's time, almost four hundred years before Moses wrote Genesis. There will be many “firsts” historically in Job as a result. Matthew is obviously the first book in the New Testament, and will also contain many “firsts”.

**RULE #13:**  
**Always take a passage literally until it is impossible for you to take it literally.**

Too many people try to “spiritualize” the Bible, and they get messed up as a result. They try to figure out what the Bible “means” by applying a bunch of mystical formulas to everything they read. Very few passages of the Bible are “symbolic and figurative”. A good general rule to remember is: **do not try to figure out what any passage “means” until you know what it SAYS.** The Bible SAYS what it means and means what it SAYS, except in a few Isolated places. Whenever symbolism is used, the Holy Spirit is very careful to exactly define the symbols. Jesus' parables are a classic example of this. Every “symbol” used in His parables is defined clearly somewhere in the word of God. Don't get mystical - just BELIEVE exactly what you read as you read it.

**RULE #14:**

**Always be prepared to change whatever you have been taught or you have believed when it goes contrary to the Bible. Never make the Bible line-up with what you believe, always line yourself up to what the Bible says!**

Don't ever come to the Bible with any preconceived ideas. Your attitude should be that you will change anything you believe if it doesn't line up with word of God. If you approach the word of God with your mind already made up as to what you believe. God cannot reveal anything to you. You must have that freedom in the word of God where God can show you things which may go contrary to your beliefs. Over the years, I have dealt with scores of people who were messed up on a bad doctrine. When I have shown them beyond any shadow of a doubt what is true, the thing which keeps many of them messed up is their attitude when they say, (and I have heard many of them say exactly these words), "I don't care what the Bible says, I am going to believe what I have been taught." When you say something like that, you are finished spiritually. You must be willing to bring **ANYTHING** in your life in line with the word of God.

**RULE #15:**

**Numbers are a major key in the Bible.**

This subject is so important I will devote an entire chapter to it later.

These fifteen rules are the building blocks upon which you can begin to develop an understanding of the word of God. You should review them constantly until they become second nature to you. In my ministry, I have a two hour open forum question and answer Bible study every Thursday night. There are at least one hundred people present every week, and they are free to ask me any question they wish about the Bible, cold turkey, with no advance notice. That obviously leaves me open for some pretty tough questions from time to time, especially with those people. I never attempt to answer any of those questions without filtering them

## Chapter 3 - The Rules

through one or more of these fifteen rules. You should do the same thing in your own mind any time your reading produces questions as to what God is trying to say in the Bible.

These rules are listed in the back of this book so you can use them as a reference source and have them handy any time you need them. They can be found in Appendix A.

**2Timothy 2:5 says:**

***And if a man also strive for masteries, yet is he not crowned,  
except he strive lawfully.***

If you wish to “strive for masteries” in your Christian life, it is imperative that you do it lawfully by following the basic rules of Bible Study detailed in this chapter.

## Chapter 4

### Rightly Dividing the Word of Truth

*Study to shew thyself approved unto God, a workman that needeth not to be ashamed, rightly dividing the word of truth.*

2Timothy 2:15

The above verse, 2Timothy 2:15, is one of those million dollar verses. If you really want to learn how to study the Bible, why not look to the premier verse which tells you how to do it?

Now the verse says, “Study to shew thyself approved unto God”, not the youth director, your pastor, your college, or your college professor; unto God. You should have one purpose in mind when you study the Bible: to be approved unto God. Notice, the verse also says you are to be a WORKMAN. That concept is foreign to our society today. What we have today is a whole bunch of kids coming out of Bible college who want a church of five thousand people, with a salary of \$50,000 a year, and two brand new cars in the garage. I once heard a young man who had just graduated from Bible college say he wouldn't take any church less than two thousand people. I promise you, he is still looking for that mystical church somewhere.

We are raised today in an instant society. We can go to McDonald's and if we don't get waited on in sixty seconds the meal is free. If we want to buy something and don't have the money, we take our credit card out and get it anyway. Almost anything we want we can have right now. We live in such a society where everything is geared to “right now”, that we have raised a whole generation of Christians who want to be instant spiritual giants. It doesn't come right now!

## Chapter 4 - Rightly Dividing the Word of Truth

I came from Harold Henninger's church, the Canton Baptist Temple in Canton, Ohio. I hear college boys say "I want a church like that!" What they forget to realize is it took thirty-two years and four heart attacks to build that church into what it is today.

Now look at the rest of the verse: "...a workman that needeth not to be ashamed, RIGHTLY DIVIDING the word of truth."

People ask, "Why are there so many different people believing different things? Some people believe in tongues, others don't. Some people have church on Saturday while we have church on Sunday. One believes in storehouse tithing and others give to any cause that comes along. How do I know who is right and what I am supposed to believe?"

The reason for all the confusion is because people will not put divisions in the right places in the word of God. The Bible has proper divisions, and if you don't put those divisions in the right places, you end up in the wrong place. There are at least fifteen different major divisions and/or dispensations in the Bible (probably more), and it is ESSENTIAL to divide them properly. Briefly, these include:

1. The Old Testament;
2. The New Testament;
3. Genesis 1:1 (the beginning);
4. Ezekiel 28 and Isaiah 14  
(the fall of Satan between Genesis 1:1 and Genesis 1:2);
5. The Adamic covenant;
6. The fall of Adam to the Law;
7. Moses (the Law) to John the Baptist;
8. John the Baptist to the death of Jesus Christ;
9. The death of Jesus Christ to the Resurrection;
10. The Resurrection until the final rejection  
by the Jews (Acts 7);
11. The Church Age;
12. The Tribulation period;
13. The Great Tribulation (the last three and one-half years);
14. The Millennium;
15. Eternity.

## Chapter 4 - Rightly Dividing the Word of Truth

So many times, critics of the Bible will use their favorite cop-out as an excuse for not doing what God wants them to do, namely: “The Bible is full of contradictions.”

The fact is, the Bible **IS** full of contradictions. WHAT!?!? Yes, you read right, the Bible **IS** full of contradictions. Let me give you a few of them:

---

*Now go and smite Amalek, and utterly destroy all that they have, and spare them not; but slay both man and woman, infant and suckling, ox and sheep, camel and ass.* 1Samuel 15:3

### Contradicts

*Thou shalt not kill.* Exodus 20:13

---

*These shall ye eat of all that are in the waters: whatsoever hath fins and scales in the waters, in the seas, and in the rivers, them shall ye eat. And all that have not fins and scales in the seas, and in the rivers, of all that move in the waters, and of any living thing which is in the waters, they shall be an abomination unto you: They shall be even an abomination unto you; ye shall not eat of their flesh, but ye shall have their carcasses in abomination.*

Leviticus 11:9-11

### Contradicts

*For every creature of God is good, and nothing to be refused, if it be received with thanksgiving.* 1Timothy 4:4

---

*Let no man therefore judge you in meat, or in drink, or in respect of an holyday, or of the new moon, or of the Sabbath days.*

Colossians 2:16

Chapter 4 - Rightly Dividing the Word of Truth

**Contradicts**

*Remember the Sabbath day, to keep it holy.*

**Exodus 20:8**

---

*Knowing that a man is not justified by the works of the law, but by the faith of Jesus Christ, even we have believed in Jesus Christ, that we might be justified by the faith of Christ, and not by the works of the law: for by the works of the law shall no flesh be justified.*

**Galatians 2:16**

**Contradicts**

*Was not Abraham our father justified by works, when he had offered Isaac his son upon the altar?*

**James 2:21**

---

*And it came to pass after these things, that God did tempt Abraham....*

**Genesis 22:1**

**Contradicts**

*Let no man say when he is tempted, I am tempted of God: for God cannot be tempted with evil, neither tempteth he any man.*

**James 1:13**

---

These are only a few of the many so-called “contradictions” in the Bible. But the Bible has no contradictions. The contradiction exists only in the mind of the skeptic. The man or woman who doesn't believe the word of God will use verses like those listed above to try to prove God is a liar, while the sincere person who believes God cannot lie will RIGHTLY DIVIDE those verses and place them in their proper context, and thus maintain the truth of the Bible.

In the previous chapter, I gave you the rules of Bible study. Rule #10 was: “Always give the Bible the benefit of the doubt.” This rule is absolutely critical to



## Chapter 4 - Rightly Dividing the Word of Truth

remember when you encounter an apparent “contradiction”. A secondary part of Rule #10 which covers these “contradictions” is this:

**Whenever the Bible APPEARS to contradict itself, God is trying to get your attention to show you a great spiritual truth.**

However, you cannot find this truth unless and until you RIGHTLY DIVIDE the verses to reconcile the so-called contradictions. As we proceed further, I will explain in detail some of the major divisions to help you do this.

Let's take one of the above “contradictions” and I will show you how this works. In Galatians 2:16, Paul says that a man is **NOT** justified by works but by faith. In James 2:20-21, James says that faith without works is dead and that Abraham was justified by works. These verses contradict each other, right?

Well, the first two rules of Bible study from the previous chapter were to determine the context of the passage, and who specifically is being addressed. The book of Galatians is written to “the churches of Galatia” (Galatians 1:2). In chapter two, Paul is addressing saved people in the New Testament and telling them that in the New Testament, a man (any man), is justified by faith without works. The book of James is written to the “twelve tribes” (James 1:1). It is not specifically addressed to the church, but to the Jews. In chapter two, James is telling the Jews how ABRAHAM was justified by works when he offered up Isaac. Abraham lived in the Old Testament. Thus by realizing the context of each passage and then RIGHTLY DIVIDING the Old Testament from the New Testament, you learn a great spiritual truth: Men in the Old Testament were not “saved” in the same way men in the New Testament are. There ends the “contradiction”.

Every so-called contradiction in the Bible can be resolved in the same way. That is called “RIGHTLY DIVIDING the word of truth”.

For now, let's discuss the best way to rightly divide the Bible: in divisions of three. For example, every verse in the Bible is written to one of three groups of people. In Revelation 22, the Bible talks about eternity, and it mentions the **new heavens**,

## Chapter 4 - Rightly Dividing the Word of Truth

the **new earth**, and **new Jerusalem**. Did you ever wonder why there were three of them? It is because the Bible is written to three groups of people: the **Jews**, the **Gentiles**, and the **Church**: and you can match those three groups with the three places in Eternity mentioned in Revelation 22.

When you study the Bible, you should know there are three applications for every verse: **a doctrinal application**, **a historical application**, and **an inspirational application**. God is a trinity: **Father**, **Son**, and **Holy Spirit**. If you want to study the person and work of the Lord Jesus Christ, the best way to do it is by His three offices: **Prophet** (while He was here on earth), **Priest** (during the church age), and **King** (at the second coming). That is called “RIGHTLY DIVIDING the word of truth”.

God's pattern of threes can be found all the way through the Bible, so let's look at it a little closer. Of course, the Bible is made up of an Old Testament and a New Testament. Then the Bible is incomplete, because if three is the structure of things, then there is one part missing. But in **John 1:1** it says:

***In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God.***

And in **John 1:14** it says:

***...The Word was made flesh, and dwelt among us....***

The third part of the word is the Incarnate Word, the Lord Jesus Christ. That is why it is so imperative for you to have a right relationship with Jesus Christ if you want to learn the Bible.

Now what I am about to say may sound like a contradiction, but, please, stay with me, and think it through. The Bible is the word of God. It is absolutely perfect in every detail. “Every word of God is pure”, Proverbs 30:5 says. Nothing is there that shouldn't be there, and nothing is missing. It is the full and complete revelation of God to mankind, and every “jot and tittle” is absolutely perfectly infallible and totally complete. Yet the Bible is incomplete without the third part, the incarnate Word, the Lord Jesus Christ. Without Him as your Saviour, Lord, Master, Guide and Teacher, you will never unlock its great truths.

So the Bible says:

***Study to shew thyself approved unto God, a workman that needeth not to be ashamed, rightly dividing the word of truth.***

Then you must put those divisions in the right place.

Of course, the first division you **MUST** place concerns who is being addressed in any particular passage. You **MUST** ask yourself: “Who is it written to? Is it written to the Church, the Jews, or the Gentiles?”

Secondly, you must realize all scripture has three applications - don't miss this. If you don't get all three applications, you will misapply the verse.

### **1. All scripture has a Historical application:**

All scripture fits somewhere in history; it actually happened. For example, the story of Cain and Abel is a historical fact. Abel was a good man, Cain was a bad man. Cain brought an offering before the Lord, of the fruit of the ground. Abel killed a Lamb and brought that Lamb before the Lord for his offering. The Lord looked at the sacrifices and saw the blood shed for Abel's offering and said, “I like that, it's pretty good.” He saw the turnips Cain brought and said, “Cain, you know you can't get blood out of a turnip. What are you trying to prove?”\* So God wouldn't accept Cain's offering. That is the historical application; Cain and Abel brought their offerings to the Lord, and the Lord had respect unto one and not the other.

### **2. All scripture has a Doctrinal application:**

What is the doctrinal application of the story of Cain and Abel? Abel is a picture of a group of people, the nation of Israel. Cain is the first of eighteen types of the Anti-Christ in the Old Testament.\*\* Cain had a mark, just like the Anti-Christ will have one. Cain was religious; he brought an offering to the Lord, but it was the wrong one. The Anti-Christ will operate the same way. Cain persecuted Abel for his “religion” - the Anti-Christ will persecute the Jews. The story of Cain and Abel is a picture of the Anti-Christ dealing with the nation of Israel during the Tribulation period.

### **3. All scripture has a Inspirational application:**

The inspirational application means there is something in it for you; it has a

\* **This is where that expression comes from. That is something else about the Bible, all those cute little clichés you hear are found hi the word of God.**

\*\* **There are 18 because  $6 + 6 + 6 = 18$ .**

## Chapter 4 - Rightly Dividing the Word of Truth

practical application to your life today. The story of Cain and Abel is a picture of two men: One of them is a man who has been saved by the blood (Abel); the other is a man who has tried to be saved by his own works - an unsaved man (Cain).

Those are the three basic applications of the story of Cain and Abel. Now let's look at another one.

Let's take the entire book of Job and look at its three applications. Historically, the book of Job deals with the events of a real, live, human being, named Job. He lived around Abraham's time, and actually went through those persecutions and trials for seven days and seven nights just like it says.

The doctrinal application of the book of Job is the tribulation period. Job lived in the land of Uz. That is exactly where the Jews will be during the tribulation, south of the Dead Sea. Job was persecuted for seven days by the Devil. The Jews will be persecuted for seven years by the Devil in the tribulation. At the end of the book of Job, he got all his kids back and a double portion of all of his goods. In Ezekiel 40 through 48, it says the Jews will get double blessings at the second coming when the tribulation is finally over. Just by a wild "coincidence," there are forty-two chapters in the book of Job, and there will be forty-two months in the tribulation. Doctrinally, the book of Job pictures the tribulation because Job was persecuted, just like the nation of Israel will be.

The inspirational application applies to your life practically in some way. Job went through some trials in life because God wanted to test his faith. Therefore, I know I will go through some trials in my life to test my faith. When I look at the end result of Job's life, I know those trials are for a reason and that all things work together for good to them who love God.

Now there is no way you will instantly understand all three applications of every verse you will read, but at least you now have a basis of understanding the direction God has for you when you are reading, and that's important. When you study the Bible, you must study it within the boundaries God has given. And of course, 2Timothy 2:15 defines one of the major boundaries:

**RIGHTLY DIVIDING the word of truth.**

# Chapter 5

## The Theme of the Bible

*And Absalom, whom we anointed over us, is dead in battle. Now therefore why speak ye not a word of bringing the king back?*

**2Samuel 19:10**

This chapter will cover perhaps the most misunderstood subject in the entire Bible, specifically: What is the Bible about? If you asked the next ten thousand people you saw, this question, I doubt if even three of them would give the right answer. Instead, you would get answers like:

**“The Bible is a book about salvation.”** The Bible contains SEVERAL plans of salvation, one of which is the plan of salvation for this age: faith in the shed blood of the Lord Jesus Christ. But that is not the central theme of the Bible.

**“The Bible is a book to tell you how to live a good life.”** That is true, the Bible is full of principles which, if applied to your life, will help you live a moral, decent life; however, that is not the main subject of the book.

**“The Bible is about Jesus.”** That is a half-truth. Of course, Jesus is the main CHARACTER in the Bible, but what specifically about the Lord Jesus Christ does the Bible center around?

The specific theme of the Bible is the **Second Coming of the Lord Jesus Christ to this earth to establish His Kingdom**. It is a story about a King and His Kingdom. Whatever else transpires in the process of that King establishing His Kingdom is simply part of that final objective.

Now please don't misunderstand me, I thank God I am saved. I thank God He sent His Son to die in my place on the cross of Calvary and take the punishment I

## Chapter 5 - The Theme of the Bible

deserved. In MY eyes, my salvation was the greatest thing that ever happened to me, and I try to tell everyone I can how they can be saved; but that is NOT what the Bible is centered around. The greatest day on God's calendar is **NOT** the day His Son was murdered for sinful men. God's greatest day is when that Son, the Lord Jesus Christ, comes back to this Earth and gets what rightfully belongs to Him: the Millennial Kingdom.

An understanding of this central issue absolutely **ESSENTIAL** to understanding the Bible. That should be obvious. It is impossible to understand any book unless you know the main subject; why would it be any different with the Bible? We will devote the next three chapters to this subject, and study in detail the nature of this theme throughout the Old and New Testaments. Let me show you how this subject of a King and a throne encompasses the entire Bible.

***In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth. And the earth was without form, and void; and darkness was upon the face of the deep. And the Spirit of God moved upon the face of the waters. And God said, Let there be light: and there was light.***

**Genesis 1:1-3**

In this passage, we find the first direct quote recorded in the Bible: "Let there be light." However, there was something said by someone else **BEFORE** God said that. Let's look a little closer at the passage and see if we can find out what that was.

***In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth. And the earth was without form, and void...***

Wait a minute. Is that how God makes things? The God of the Bible is perfect; I don't read anywhere that he makes things without form and void. When God makes something, He makes it perfect. His creatures step in and mess it up; God doesn't!

In Job 38, God begins asking some questions of Job regarding the Physical creation which will shed some light on this dilemma. **Job 38:4-7** says (God speaking to Job):

***Where wast thou when I laid the foundations of the earth? declare, if thou hast understanding. Who hath laid the measures thereof, if thou knowest? or who hath stretched the line upon it?***

***Whereupon are the foundations thereof fastened? or who laid the corner stone thereof;***

***When the morning stars sang together, and all the sons of God shouted for joy?***

Why would the sons of God shout for joy if God made a formless void? Imagine the morning stars singing praises to God for creating an earth in that condition! It is obvious that something happened BETWEEN the time of the original creation in Genesis 1:1 and the condition of the earth described in Genesis 1:2. This is commonly referred to as the “gap theory”; however, I call it the gap FACT; there is no “theory” to it. What happened in that time element was the fall of Lucifer. The fall of Lucifer is recorded in Ezekiel 28 and Isaiah 14, and the specific quote of Lucifer we want to see is found in **Isaiah 14:12-14**:

***How art thou fallen from heaven, O Lucifer, son of the morning! how art thou cut down to the ground, which didst weaken the nations! For thou hast said in thine heart...***

Now here is what he said; watch the ISSUE in question:

***I will ascend into heaven, I WILL EXALT MY THRONE above the stars of God: I will sit also upon the mount of the congregation, in the sides of the north: I will ascend above the heights of the clouds; I will be like the most High.***

The issue in question is a THRONE. The question is, “Who will run the show, God or the Devil?” It has absolutely nothing to do with salvation or a set of moral principles to help you live a good Christian life. Again, please don't misunderstand me, those things are extremely important, but they are only a part of the overall plan of God in establishing the reign of the Lord Jesus Christ on this earth. We have seen how this question of a kingdom is at the very beginning of creation; let's look at the very last chapter in the Bible and see how this whole thing will end. **Revelation 22:5** says, in speaking of the events after the final judgment:

***And there shall be no night there; and they need no candle, neither light of the sun; for the Lord God giveth them light: AND THEY SHALL REIGN FOR EVER AND EVER.***

The Bible begins with a struggle over a throne, and ends with Kings reigning on thrones. That is the central issue of the Book. Throughout the Bible you will find

## Chapter 5 - The Theme of the Bible

two people after a kingdom. One is the Lord Jesus Christ, and of course, He rightfully deserves to be King. The other is the Devil and he doesn't deserve it, and spends his entire time trying to frustrate God's plan, destroy God's plan, or counterfeit God's plan.

This Kingdom is actually divided into two separate kingdoms called in the Bible the Kingdom of God and the Kingdom of Heaven. **Revelation 11:15** says, in speaking of the second coming of Jesus Christ:

*And the seventh angel sounded; and there were great voices in heaven, saying, The kingdoms [plural] of this world are become the kingdoms [plural] of our Lord, and of his Christ; and he shall reign for ever and ever.*

There is more than one kingdom. If you ever hope to have the Bible make sense to you, you must understand the difference between the Kingdom of God and the Kingdom of Heaven. I suppose I should tell you at the outset, almost every Bible College in the country teaches that those two kingdoms are the same. The average author in writing about Matthew, Mark, Luke or John will make the assumption that the kingdoms are the same. Of course, you might have figured as much. When a man takes the position that the Kingdom of God and the Kingdom of Heaven are the same, he has disqualified himself as a legitimate Bible teacher, because the Bible is wrapped around those two kingdoms, and they are **NOT** the same. I trust as you continue to read this will become more apparent.

We will not take the time to pursue an exhaustive study of the kingdoms. That would require another book at least twice the size of this one. Instead, all I want to do is to show you the differences so you can have a basic overview of the Bible. Let's look at those basic differences.

There are, of course, some passages in the Bible where the kingdoms are used interchangeably, and that is why most people think they are the same, but that is an incorrect assumption. Just because they are used interchangeably in a few places does not make the two kingdoms exactly identical in all aspects throughout the entire Bible. What it does prove is that occasionally both kingdoms are present at the same time, or in one particular aspect, they are **SIMILAR**, but not identical.

Before we can go any further, we must get a Bible definition of the Kingdom of God and the Kingdom of Heaven. Let's look at the kingdom of God first, which is defined in **Romans 14:17**.



***For the kingdom of God is not meat and drink; but righteousness, and peace, and joy in the Holy Ghost.***

Meat and drink are literal, physical things. Righteousness, peace and joy are spiritual things. Now let's look at another passage in **Luke 17**, beginning with **verse 20**:

***And when he was demanded of the Pharisees, when the kingdom of God should come, he answered them and said, The kingdom of God cometh not with observation: Neither shall they say, Lo here! or, lo there! for, behold, the kingdom of God is within you.***

Whatever the kingdom of God is, it is **INSIDE** people, and has to do with spiritual things. Let's see what **1Corinthians 4:20** says:

***For the kingdom of God is not in word, but in power.***

So the kingdom of God is spiritual, and not physical. Let's look at one more passage to see how that relates to us. In 1Corinthians, Paul is talking to the Church. The context is the rapture of the church, and Paul is discussing the glorified body we will receive at that time.

***Now this I say, brethren, that flesh and blood cannot inherit the kingdom of God; neither doth corruption inherit incorruption.***

**1Corinthians 15:50**

Flesh and blood are physical things. They can't inherit the kingdom of God because the kingdom of God is spiritual. That spiritual kingdom is made up of powers, principalities, angels, and all the spiritual beings in God's creation.

When you were saved, you were born again. In John chapter 1 and John chapter 3, the new birth is described clearly as a spiritual birth of God. You can't say "Here it is" or "There it is" because it is a spiritual kingdom you must be born into by the new birth. When you get saved, the Holy Spirit of God comes to live **INSIDE** you, and He reigns over the spiritual kingdom of God. That is why it is **WITHIN** you. The kingdom of God is **ALWAYS** a spiritual kingdom.

Now let's look at the kingdom of Heaven. It is just the opposite, a literal kingdom. This kingdom of Heaven is also sometimes called the kingdom of Israel.

***And the Lord said unto him, Call his name Jezreel; for yet a little while, and I will avenge the blood of Jezreel upon the house of Jehu, and will***

***cause to cease the kingdom of the house of Israel.***

**Hosea 1:4**

In the next chapter, I will show you why, when, and how the kingdom ceases, but for now, just tuck it in the back of your mind that the kingdom of Israel ceases at a specific time.

In Acts 1, you can see both kingdoms in the same passage, and observe the major difference. When Jesus appears in Acts 1 after the resurrection, notice what takes place:

***The former treatise have I made, O Theophilus, of all that Jesus began both to do and teach,  
Until the day in which he was taken up, after that he through the Holy Ghost had given commandments unto the apostles whom he had chosen:  
To whom also he shewed himself alive after his passion by many infallible proofs, being seen of them forty days, and speaking of the things pertaining to the kingdom of God...***

**Acts 1:1-3**

Notice he is telling the disciples about the kingdom of God, but the Jews don't want to hear that, so they asked him a question in verse 6:

***When they therefore were come together, they asked of him, saying, Lord, wilt thou at this time restore again the kingdom to Israel?***

They wanted the kingdom of Heaven to be literally restored to the Nation of Israel at that time. The kingdom of Heaven is the literal visible reign of Jesus Christ over the “kingdoms” of this earth. That is what the Jews wanted. They were looking for the Messiah to come and set up the kingdom promised to Israel in the Old Testament.

When Jesus began teaching them about the kingdom of God, they said, “OK, Lord, that's great, but what about the other one? Are you going to restore right now the kingdom to Israel?”

Of course, almost every Bible “teacher” alive today comments on that question along these lines:

“The poor, selfish, worldly disciples asked this question not understanding the true significance of Jesus' teaching, and had they been more spiritually mature (like me) they wouldn't have asked such a ridiculous and carnal question.”

That “teaching” is one hundred percent false. In Luke 24, Jesus met and talked with two of these disciples as they were traveling on the road to Emmaus right after His resurrection. Notice what happens.

***Then he said unto them, O fools, and slow of heart to believe all that the prophets have spoken:***

***Ought not Christ to have suffered these things, and to enter into his glory? And beginning at Moses and all the prophets, he expounded unto them in all the scriptures the things concerning himself.***

**Luke 24:25-27**

Jesus personally taught them the “things concerning himself” through the entire Old Testament. Then later in the chapter, He appeared to all of them and did the same thing, only this time He did something more:

***Then opened he their understanding, that they might understand the scriptures.***

**Luke 24:45**

The question in Acts 1:6 was asked by a group of men who had lived with the Lord Jesus Christ for three and one-half years, and had seen and experienced His entire ministry on this earth from start to finish. They had a forty day intensive “crash course” on the Old Testament taught personally by God manifest in the flesh, coupled with supernatural enlightenment to be able to understand **ALL THINGS** concerning the Lord Jesus Christ. Those men knew the Old Testament better than any Bible “teacher” who ever lived. Their question was **NOT** a selfish, ridiculous, carnal question. It was based upon factual prophecies made in the Old Testament concerning a literal kingdom promised to the nation of Israel. Watch how Jesus Himself confirms this in His response to their question:

***And he said unto them, It is not for you to know the times or the seasons, which the Father hath put in his own power.***

***But ye shall receive power, after that the Holy Ghost is come upon you: and ye shall be witnesses unto me both in Jerusalem, and in all Judaea, and in Samaria, and unto the uttermost part of the earth.***

**Acts 1:7,8**

## Chapter 5 - The Theme of the Bible

Jesus did not deny the literal kingdom was coming to Israel: in fact, the implications of His answer prove this kingdom will come. His answer in essence was, "I'm not going to tell you **WHEN** it's coming, boys, just get busy preaching." The kingdom of Heaven takes on several forms throughout the Bible: however, it is **ALWAYS** a physical kingdom on this earth. When Jesus talks about it in Matthew 5, He is referring to the Millennial reign when he comes back to set up His kingdom. In the Old Testament, prophetically and doctrinally it is the same thing; but historically it is the reign of the nation of Israel on this earth over the kingdoms of this world, most clearly pictured by Solomon's reign in 1Kings around 1000BC.

By now, you should be able to see how these two kingdoms differ in their essential natures. The kingdom of God is a spiritual kingdom; the kingdom of Heaven is a literal one.

In the next two chapters, we will take a historical trip through the Bible focusing on these two kingdoms. By the time we are finished, you should have a very thorough overview of the plan of God for this earth and universe as revealed in the Bible. With that background, the Bible should become a brand new book for you. Never again will you look at the Old Testament as a dead, dull, boring list of "begats." Instead, it details specifically the plan of God for the ages and contains the only true revelation of the perfect society - the Millennial reign of the Lord Jesus Christ on throne of David in Jerusalem.

# Chapter 6

## Old Testament Survey

*And he said unto them, These are the words which I spake unto you, while I was yet with you, that all things must be fulfilled, which were written in the law of Moses, and in the prophets, and in the psalms, concerning me.*

**Luke 24:44**

Now that I have established clearly the theme of the Bible, and shown you the major differences between the kingdom of God and the kingdom of heaven, let's go back to the beginning and trace this subject through the word of God starting with Genesis.

In Genesis 1-3, a man shows up named Adam. Observe what the Bible says about him in **Genesis 2:7**:

*And the Lord God formed man of the dust of the ground, and breathed into his nostrils the breath of life; and man became a living soul.*

I want you to see some particular things about Adam, because you will begin to see the development of the Old Testament and what God had in mind in Genesis, the book of the beginnings. Look at Genesis 1:26, and you will find God gave Adam the crown for both kingdoms:

*And God said, Let us make man in our image, after our likeness: and let them have dominion over the fish of the sea, and over the fowl of the air, and over the cattle, and over all the earth, and over every creeping thing that creepeth upon the earth.*

## Chapter 6 - Old Testament Survey

God made man in His own image, and God's image is Jesus Christ. Let me show that to you from the word of God.

***But if our gospel be hid, it is hid to them that are lost:  
In whom the god of this world hath blinded the minds of them which believe not, lest the light of the glorious gospel of Christ, WHO IS THE IMAGE OF GOD, should shine unto them.***

**2Corinthians 4:3-4**

Colossians 1:15 speaking of Jesus Christ says:

***WHO IS THE IMAGE OF THE INVISIBLE GOD, the firstborn of every creature:***

Hebrews 1:3 also speaking of Jesus Christ says:

***Who being the brightness of his glory, and THE EXPRESS IMAGE OF HIS PERSON, and upholding all things by the word of his power, when he had by himself purged our sins, sat down on the right hand of the Majesty on high;***

With the three statements above, how could anything be clearer? The image of God is Jesus Christ. When Adam was made in God's image, he was THE son of God. In the book of Luke, we see this again. Chapter 3 contains the earthly genealogy of Jesus Christ through Mary. Look at Luke 3:38:

***Which was the son of Enos, which was the son of Seth, which was the son of Adam, which was THE son of God.***

The verse says Adam was **THE** son of God, not just **A** son of GOD. He was created with the spiritual image of God, and he was identical to the resurrected Jesus Christ.

Now let's look at **Genesis 1:26** again:

***And God said, Let us make man in our image, after our likeness: and let them have dominion over the fish of the sea, and over the fowl of the air, and over the cattle, and over all the earth, and over every creeping thing that creepeth upon the earth.***

What are those things Adam was given dominion over, spiritual or physical? Physical: so Adam was clearly given dominion over both kingdoms. Notice the word “dominion”: a king has dominion. He was king over the kingdom of God because he was a spiritual being made in the image of God. He was king over the kingdom of heaven because God gave him dominion over the physical creation.

God had a plan for Adam and Eve. That plan was the fulfillment of the kingdom of God and the kingdom of heaven. When God made them, He made them to populate those kingdoms.

Let's trace it through and see what happened to Adam. Look at **Genesis 2:15-17**:

***And the LORD God took the man, and put him into the garden of Eden to dress it and to keep it.***

***And the Lord God commanded the man, saying, Of every tree of the garden thou mayest freely eat:***

***But of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, thou shalt not eat of it: for in the day that thou eatest thereof thou shalt surely die.***

God was not talking about physical death, because in chapter five it says Adam lived nine hundred years after he ate the forbidden fruit. God was talking about something dying. When Adam sinned, he lost God's image and died spiritually. We see that in the record of Adam's descendants. Look at **Genesis 5:1-3**:

***This is the book of the generations of Adam. In the day that God created man, in the likeness of God made he him;***

***Male and female created he them; and blessed them, and called their name Adam, in the day when they were created.***

***And Adam lived an hundred and thirty years, and begat a son in his own likeness, after his image: and called his name Seth;***

When Adam sinned, he lost God's image. This is very clear from Genesis 5, because when he had a son after the fall, he begat a son in his **OWN** image, after his **OWN** likeness. This is why the Bible says in Romans 5:12:

***Wherefore, as by one man sin entered into the world ,and death by sin; and so death passed upon all men, for that all have sinned:***

When Adam was created, he was king over the kingdom of God and the kingdom of heaven. One is spiritual; one is literal. When he sinned, he lost one of those kingdoms. The Bible says, “in the day thou eatest thereof, thou shalt surely die.”

## Chapter 6 - Old Testament Survey

We've already seen it wasn't his physical body that died, it was his spiritual body. When he died spiritually, he forfeited control of the kingdom of God, and that kingdom went out. The only thing left was the kingdom of heaven. Please notice in Genesis 3:17-19, God did **NOT** take away Adam's dominion over the earth after the fall.

After sin entered and Adam died spiritually, the world became wicked. The Devil thought he had won the victory, but we know he didn't. God knew exactly what would happen, and He allowed it in order to fulfill His purposes. The next event that took place was when God wiped out the world with water. Watch what happened to Noah when he stepped off the boat.

***And God blessed Noah and his sons, and said unto them, Be fruitful, and multiply, and replenish the earth.***

**Genesis 9:1**

That was the exact same commandment God gave Adam. Look at the rest of the passage:

***And the fear of you and the dread of you shall be upon every beast of the earth, and upon every fowl of the air, upon all that moveth upon the earth, and upon all the fishes of the sea; into your hand are they delivered.***

***Every moving thing that liveth shall be meat for you; even as the green herb have I given you all things.***

***But flesh with the life thereof, which is the blood thereof, shall ye not eat.***

***And surely your blood of your lives will I require; at the hand of every beast will I require it, and at the hand of man; at the hand of every man's brother will I require the life of man. Whoso sheddeth man's blood, by man shall his blood be shed: for in the image of God made he man.***

***And you, be ye fruitful, and multiply; bring forth abundantly in the earth, and multiply therein.***

**Genesis 9:2-7**

God gave Noah the exact same commission He gave Adam, with one major difference: Noah was given **nothing** over the kingdom of God. From the fall of Adam until Christ showed up, there was **NO** kingdom of God on this earth. The only kingdom on this earth was a literal, physical kingdom dealing with the nation of Israel.



We see God setting up the kingdom in Genesis 1-3. We see the Devil messing it up in Genesis 3-6. Then the Devil tried to take it over and counterfeit it in Genesis 6. God wiped it out in Genesis 6-8 and re-established it in Genesis 9 with Noah. But you know what happened: man messed it up again and by Genesis 10 and 11 the whole world was corrupt...again. They tried to build a tower to heaven, and God messed that plan up, too.

After Noah, the next man was Abraham. When he appears, we see God starting to develop the earthly kingdom.

Abraham was promised a seed which would get the kingdom of heaven. The promise God gave Abraham in Genesis 12 was literal, not spiritual.

After Abraham, the kingdom passed to his seed as promised through the blessing. It went to Isaac and then Jacob. Here, we begin to see the formulation of the kingdom of heaven; in fact, the rest of the book of Genesis deals specifically with the foundation of this kingdom through the setting up of the nation of Israel. By the end of the book of Genesis, Israel was in Egypt. Egypt was the foundry where, for over four hundred years, God hammered out on His anvil, a nation which would take over the kingdom of heaven and run this earth for all of eternity.

After Jacob came the twelve tribes, and then God narrowed it down to one. In **Genesis 49:10** the Bible says:

***The sceptre shall not depart from Judah...***

Judah will be a key figure in this story.

By the end of the book of Genesis, the children of Israel had become a mighty nation. In Exodus 1:8, the Bible says:

***Now there arose up a new king over Egypt, which knew not Joseph.***

This king took a look at what was going on and said. "Boy, these people are getting strong. When they first came down here, there were only a few of them; now there's over two million. We've got to do something. If we don't, they will take us over and run us. Besides, I don't like the way they keep talking about this Abraham character and how they will rule the earth someday."

So Egypt put Israel under hard bondage, and forced them to make bricks. You saw how Yul Brynner treated them in the movie. By this time, God was already preparing someone to take over the kingdom.

## Chapter 6 - Old Testament Survey

His name was Charlton Heston...I mean Moses. Moses and Pharaoh went back and forth while Moses brought in the plagues. In Exodus 12, God killed all the firstborn and Pharaoh said, "Pack your bags and go!"

The next four books Moses wrote are not in chronological order. They deal with events which all take place at around the same time. Every one of these books has a different theme, and it is important to understand those themes as you read them.

The theme of Exodus is redemption by blood. Leviticus sets up the Jewish religious order through the Levitical priesthood. The book of Numbers deals with the unbelief of the children of Israel and the trials they went through because of turning away from God. In Deuteronomy, the Lord had to give them the law for the second time because of all their problems and trials in the wilderness. "Deutero" means two.

But all four of these books are nothing more than the setting up of the outward structure of the kingdom of heaven. As you read further in the Old Testament, you see clearly how these first five books figure into the kingdom set up as God prepared them for forty years through signs and wonders, and trials and tribulations.

Next is the book of Joshua. In this book, the nation of Israel crossed over into the promised land. This was where the nation of Israel received those promises given to Abraham. If you look at it from the standpoint of the kingdom of God and the kingdom of heaven, in Joshua the nation of Israel was physically in the place where the kingdom will reign: Jerusalem. They got the kingdom structure in the wilderness; they received the land in Joshua.

Now this is obviously an oversimplification of the story. We could spend two hundred pages on each book of the Bible and never exhaust the material, but all I want you to see here is the basic structure of the Old Testament.

The next two books are Judges and Ruth. In the book of Judges, Israel was ruled by a system of Judges, as you might guess by the title of the book.

God never wanted Israel to become a democracy. We argue with the Russians over which form of government is the best; but when you look at it from a Biblical viewpoint, they both stink. Now, obviously I prefer a somewhat free democracy, such as we have in America, over a repressive communism such as Russia's; however, what God wants is a Theocracy where He is in charge. God's perfect form of government is a military dictatorship with an absolute, monarch on the

## Chapter 6 - Old Testament Survey

throne. However, no man who has ever lived is righteous enough to run it, so He has to run it Himself. That will happen in the millennium. God will be the King.

The book of Ruth tells in more detail what takes place during the time of the Judges.

NOW we come to those “boring” books of the Bible: Samuel, Kings, and Chronicles. This is where the nation of Israel becomes established. The six books in this group deal with the kings of Israel, all six of these books overlap in chronology somewhat, especially Kings and Chronicles.

The book of 1 Samuel begins with the nation of Israel in the position they were in during the Judges; they had no king. So they came to Samuel the prophet and said, “We want a king like all the other nations around us.”

Samuel said, “Well, I have bad news for you. If you would read your Bible, you would know you are not to be like other nations.”

They said, “We don't care what the Bible says. That's just your interpretation, and we don't like your preaching. We want a king. Tell God to give us a king.”

Samuel went to God and said, “Now God, these people are all messed up. I tried to talk to them, and they got mad at me. They want a king. I tried to tell them, but they won't listen.”

So God said, “Samuel, don't worry about it. They haven't rejected you, they have rejected me. If they want a king, let's give them one, but you tell them what kind of king he will be. He will kill their kids, take their land, take their cattle, take their sheep, and put them under bondage. If they want a king. I'll show them what kind of king they will get.”

So God gave them Saul. He was a rip-off. He wasn't the king God had in mind for them, but that is what the people wanted. God had David in mind. Saul was the first king of Israel; David was the second.

There is a Biblical principle at work in this story: The first one is no good, there has to be a second one. Saul was a bum; David was a good king. Cain was a wicked man; Abel was a righteous man. Esau lost the inheritance and the blessing; Jacob got it. The first Adam sinned: the last Adam paid for it and triumphed over sin and death. Your first birth made you a sinner in Adam's image on your way to Hell: your second birth put you into God's family on your way to heaven. YE MUST BE BORN AGAIN...are you?

## Chapter 6 - Old Testament Survey

There is another tremendous underlying theme throughout the Bible: man is in a mess. You know that is true in your own life. How many times has God given you clear direction in the word of God, but you said, "Lord. I appreciate that, but I want to do it my way. I'm going to make someone else king of my life."

Then God says, "Now I told you if you make someone else king you will have problems."

"Well, thank you, Lord, but mind your own business. I appreciate you dying for me...but buzz off!"

What happens? You mess it up, of course. Then you have to come back and say, "Lord, I messed it up. I'm sorry."

Then God says, "OK, are you ready to give the right king first place like I told you?"

This period is the most productive time in Israel's history. You are not taught this in public school, as you might expect, because the public schools want to sham you. They hate God. They are run by the Federal Government, and the government hates God. That system is Anti-Christ and wants to destroy the word of God, so they will never teach you what I am about to give you.

When you study this period of time, you are studying Israel as a world power. God told them as long as they stayed true to Him and His word, no one on the face of the earth could touch them. That is a world power. They didn't have any nuclear bombs; they just had God. There are some lessons we can learn from that...but of course men never learn anything from history, do they?

During this time we see the proper set up of the kingdom of heaven under Jewish rule. The two greatest kings they ever had were right at the beginning: David and Solomon. Because this was Israel's greatest time, many of the things you find in their reigns will picture the Millennium.

Also during this time, from Samuel to Chronicles, four of the five wisdom books of the Old Testament were written. These are Psalms, Proverbs, Ecclesiastes, and the Song of Solomon. These four books, along with the book of Job, completely dissect the human race and show you how men think, act, and how to deal with them. Every philosophy man ever came up with is critiqued and destroyed in Ecclesiastes, which was written by Solomon, the wisest man who ever lived. Every "wise" saying man ever produced is borrowed from or is a counterfeit of a verse in one of those five books.

## Chapter 6 - Old Testament Survey

As I mentioned, David and Solomon were the two greatest kings Israel ever had. David, of course, out ranked his son Solomon in spiritual power, but Solomon had the vast material power. David reigned for forty years, and Solomon for forty, and that period was the apex of Israel's dynasty.

Of course, in school you are not taught this. You are taught that at this time, the Neanderthal man was running around Nebraska somewhere probably looking for the football stadium, and Fred Flintstone was alive and well, and living in Bedrock. You will find God's people are minimized in almost every college and high school history course. A college course on world history will give little if any attention to the nation of Israel. In America today we have a brainwashed generation of people who look at everything from a Gentile/American perspective. You know this is true because you evaluate everything in this world by what we have in America. If I could take you to El Salvador and show you how most of the people there live, you would say they were really strange. Yet when they come up here, they say the same thing about you. It depends upon your perspective, and Americans have been brainwashed into evaluating everything on the basis of their own lifestyles.

I take a missionary trip to El Salvador every year with a group of people from our ministry. We visit a sister church of ours there and study their culture and work for the Lord Jesus Christ. On one of our trips we ran into a Southern Baptist preacher from South Carolina. He was preaching to a crowd of people through a translator when he said, "It sure will be great when we all get to heaven. I won't have to speak through a translator then because we will all speak American." He was serious!

That is the type of narrow-minded brainwashed society we live in, which has been produced by the news media and the public school system. They absolutely refuse to consider anything based on an perspective of the Jews or the Bible, or for that matter on a perspective based on anything other than middle-class America. We don't do everything right in middle-class America!

So when someone teaches a history class, he has to teach it from a Gentile perspective because that is all he has ever been taught. The reason for this is the Devil wants to suppress the work of God throughout history. He doesn't want you to find out how the nation of Israel will be the reigning power throughout eternity.

Samuel, Kings, and Chronicles deal with the establishment of the Kingdom. Of course it didn't last, but God had it set up. The basic problem was the same: Israel

## Chapter 6 - Old Testament Survey

would not hearken unto God and run it as a Theocracy the way God wanted. Still, even with that, David and Solomon were the two greatest types in the Old Testament of Jesus Christ on the throne in the millennium. Both reigns picture the reign of the King of the Jews, the Lord Jesus Christ, when the kingdom of heaven is in full manifestation after the second coming.

There is a perfect example of this in 1Kings chapter 10. Solomon reigned about 1000 BC. David wanted to build a temple for God to dwell in, but he was not allowed to do so; instead, Solomon did. When Solomon built that temple, it was a perfect type of the Millennial temple. In 1Kings 10, Solomon was reigning. Historically, the Queen of Sheba came to Jerusalem because she had heard the fame of Solomon. Let's find out why.

***And when the queen of Sheba heard of the fame of Solomon concerning the name of the Lord, she came to prove him with hard questions.***

**1Kings 10:1**

The queen of Sheba was nobody's fool; she was a Queen. She had heard of the fame of Solomon “concerning the name of the LORD.” Look at the rest of the passage:

***And she came to Jerusalem with a very great train, with camels that bare spices, and very much gold, and precious stones: and when she was come to Solomon, she communed with him of all that was in her heart.***

***And Solomon told her all her questions: there was not any thing hid from the king, which he told her not.***

***And when the queen of Sheba had seen all Solomon's wisdom, and the house that he had built,***

***And the meat of his table, and the sitting of his servants ,and the attendance of his ministers, and their apparel, and his cupbearers, and his ascent by which he went up unto the house of the Lord; there was no more spirit in her.***

***And she said to the king, It was a true report that I heard in mine own land of thy acts and of thy wisdom.***

**1Kings 10:2-6**

Remember, they didn't have newspapers, UPI or television back then, yet the fame of the nation of Israel had spread across the known world. We are so limited in our little minds because we don't understand the magnitude of the kingdom of Israel at this time. The name of the Lord had spread through all the earth.

Everybody in the known world knew about Him; it is the idiots today who don't know.

Right after Solomon, some problems arose. They began during his last few years and when Rehoboam took over, the kingdom was split into two parts: two southern tribes, and ten northern tribes. The northern tribes were called Israel, and the southern tribes were called Judah.

After Solomon died, you know what happened: Israel turned their back on God, and the kingdom began to fall apart. They went from one good king to three bad kings, then another good king to four bad ones, and the whole nation of Israel fell apart.

Then we come to the last king Israel ever had who was really a king, Jeconiah. Let's look at what God says about this guy named Jeconiah.

There is a prophecy written about Jeconiah in Jeremiah 22. Look closely at his name: Je-coniah. "Je" is an abbreviation for Jehovah. God says, "I don't want that guy having My name connected with his because he is so wicked, so I will call him Coniah." He takes off the "Je" and says this about Coniah, and when God says this, He makes this statement to the whole earth:

***Is this man Coniah a despised broken idol? is he a vessel wherein is no pleasure? wherefore are they cast out, he and his seed, and are cast into a land which they know not?***

***O earth, earth, earth, hear the word of the Lord.***

***Thus saith the Lord, Write ye this man childless, a man that shall not prosper in his days: for no man of his seed shall prosper, sitting upon the throne of David, and ruling any more in Judah.***

**Jeremiah 22:28-30**

Because of sin, God took the throne away from Israel. From that point on, the kingdom of heaven disappears from the earth also.

The next "king" in Israel was Zedekiah, but he was not a true king, he was only a figurehead. About that time Nebuchadnezzar came to Jerusalem and said to Zedekiah, "Who do you think you are? Off the throne, bud."

Zedekiah said, "I'm the king."

Nebuchadnezzar said, "The kingdom isn't here any more, and I'm taking over. The times of the Gentiles have started."

## Chapter 6 - Old Testament Survey

So he took Zedekiah in chains to Babylon, killed his sons in front of him, then put out his eyes, so the last thing he ever saw was his sons being murdered.

At this point, the nation of Israel was completely dethroned. The date was 606 BC. From that time on, there was no kingdom on this earth at all, physical or spiritual.

Let me show you some things about this period of time from 2Chronicles 36, then I will come back and put some more books in their proper place for you. At the end of 2Chronicles, Cyrus was king in Persia. He allowed the Jews to return to their homeland, but look closely at what Cyrus said:

***Now in the first year of Cyrus king of Persia, that the word of the Lord spoken by the mouth of Jeremiah might be accomplished, the Lord stirred up the spirit of Cyrus king of Persia, that he made a proclamation throughout all his kingdom, and put it also in writing, saying, Thus saith Cyrus king of Persia, All the kingdoms of the earth hath the Lord God of heaven given me; and he hath charged me to build him an house in Jerusalem, which is in Judah. Who is there among you of all his people? The Lord his God be with him, and let him go up.***

**2Chronicles 36:22-23**

Now remember, the kingdom of heaven was gone. Cyrus was not a Jew, and God promised the kingdom to the Jews unconditionally. When this kingdom went out, Satan took over. Whoever got world domination from then on had to get it from the Devil.

He says, "Alexander the Great, do you want world domination? Fine, serve me. Nebuchadnezzar, same story. Cyrus, do you want world domination? Fine, I will give it to you if you will bow down and worship me."

Every single one of those kings are connected with the Anti-Christ in the book of Revelation.

God was finished with Israel (temporarily), because their apostasy had gone too far. From 606 BC to the first coming of Christ, there was no kingdom of God on this earth (since the fall of Adam), and there was no kingdom of heaven on this earth. Whichever Gentile power wanted control had to get it by selling out to the Devil more than the one previous to them. That is why when the Devil came to the Lord Jesus Christ in the temptation, he offered Him the kingdoms of the world if Jesus would only worship him.



He **COULD** offer them because they were **HIS TO GIVE**.

*And the devil said unto him, All this power will I give thee, and the glory of them: for that is delivered unto me; and to whomsoever I will I give it.*

Luke 4:6

**Satan is in control of the political kingdoms of this earth. How's that for a positive approach?**

Now let's go back and put the Old Testament together in its entirety. It starts with Genesis, the book of the beginnings, which sets the stage for the kingdoms. Next are the other four books of Moses which give you the structure and set up the kingdom. After this comes Joshua where the nation of Israel gets the land and establishes the kingdom. Then in Judges and Ruth the kingdom gets messed up through the apostasy of the nation of Israel, and in Samuel, Kings and Chronicles the kingdom gets established under the kings of Israel beginning with the bad king Saul, then going to David, Solomon, and their descendants. By the end of 2Chronicles, the nation is in such deep apostasy, God sends them into captivity and the Devil takes over the kingdom of heaven and the Gentiles run the earth.

Here is where the rest of the books of the Old Testament fit in. Isaiah to Malachi are prophets who preach against the sins of the nation of Israel. Ezra, Nehemiah and Esther are historical books dealing with the return of the Jews after the captivity. These books break down into three basic groups chronologically, centered around the time of the exile in 606 BC. Educators call these books Pre-Exilic, Exilic, and Post-Exilic, but all that means is: before the exile, during the exile, and after the exile. (That's the translation into English for those of you who are not in the MSU.) Those books, with their approximate dates of writing are listed in the charts on the following two pages.

<h1 style="text-align: center;">BEFORE THE EXILE</h1> <h2 style="text-align: center;">Solomon (1000BC) to Captivity of Judah (606 BC)</h2>						
PROPHET	Appox. Date of Writing/Event	Prophesied to:	King of Israel	King of Judah	<u>Kings</u> Appox. Ref.	<u>Chronicles</u> Appox. Ref.
Obadiah	887 - 885 BC	Israel	Joram (10th - 12th Year)	Ahaziah and his Mother Athaliah	2Kings 8	2Chr. 12-22
Jonah	862 BC	Nineveh	Jehu (22nd Year)	Joash (16th Year)	2Kings 10	2Chr. 24
Joel	800 BC	Israel	Jeroboam II (25th Year)	Uzziah (10th Year)	2Kings 14	2Chr. 26
Amos	787 BC	Israel	Jeroboam II (38th Year)	Uzziah (23rd Year)	2Kings 14	2Chr. 26
Hosea	785 - 725 BC	Israel	Jeroboam II (40th Year) TO Hosea (5th Year)	Uzziah (25th Year) TO Hezekiah (2nd Year)	2Kings	2Chr. 26-31
Isaiah	760 - 698 BC	Judah	Pekahiah (2nd Year) TO Assyrian Captivity	Uzziah (51st Year) TO Hezekiah (28th Year)	2Kings	2Chr. 26-32
Micah	750 - 710 BC	Judah	Pekah (9th Year) TO Assyrian Captivity	Jotham (8th Year) TO Hezekiah (16th Year)	2Kings	2Chr. 27-32
Nahum	713 BC	Judah	Assyrian Captivity	Hezekiah (13th Year)	2Kings 18	2Chr. 32
Zephaniah	630 BC	Judah	Assyrian Captivity	Josiah (7th Year)	2Kings 22	2Chr. 34
Jeremiah	629 - 588 BC	Judah	Assyrian Captivity	Josiah (8th Year) TO Babylonian	2Kings	2Chr. 34-36
Habakkuk	626 BC	Judah	Assyrian Captivity	Josiah (11th Year)	2Kings 22	2Chr. 34

<b>DURING THE EXILE</b> <b>CAPTIVITY OF JUDAH (606BC)</b> <b>to RETURN TO LAND (536 BC)</b>		
PROPHET	Appox. Date of Writing/Event	GENTILE KINGS IN POWER
DANIEL	606 - 534 BC	Nebuchadnezzar and Belshazzar (Babylon) through Darius and Cyrus (Persia) to the Decree of Cyrus
EZEKIEL	595 - 574 BC	Exclusively during the Reign of Nebuchadnezzar
LAMENTATIONS OF JEREMIAH	588 BC	During the Reign of Nebuchadnezzar

<b>AFTER THE EXILE</b> <b>RETURN TO LAND (536 BC)</b> <b>to FIRST COMING OF JESUS CHRIST</b>		
NAME OF BOOK	Appox. Date of Writing/Event	HISTORICAL REFERENCES
EZRA	536 - 457 BC	Temple rebuilt 516 BC; Ezra returns Chapter 7 (457 BC)
HAGGAI	520 BC	During rebuilding of Temple in Ezra 5
ZECHARIAH	520 - 487 BC	During rebuilding of Temple and later years (Ezra 5-6)
ESTHER	464 - 452 BC	Esther made Queen (458 BC)
NEHEMIAH	446 - 434 BC	Wall of Jerusalem begun (444 BC). End of recorded Old Testament History.
MALACHI	397 BC	Preached in last years of Nehemiah; Book written later.

## Chapter 6 - Old Testament Survey

This is how the Old Testament books lay out historically. I'm showing this to you so you can see the chronological order of the books of the Old Testament because chronologically they do not run the same as their physical order in the Bible.

Keep in mind there is no kingdom of God or kingdom of heaven on this earth after 606 BC. The Kingdoms have been turned over to the Devil. The Jews returned in Ezra and rebuilt the city, and in Nehemiah the wall and the temple were rebuilt, but if you compare the dedication of the temple in Ezra and Nehemiah with the dedication of Solomon's temple, it is pitiful. In fact, the elderly people in Ezra and Nehemiah who remembered the first temple wept because of the meager dedication. In Ezra, they sacrificed 400 lambs; in Solomon's day it was 120,000. Even though they were back in the land, and had rebuilt the temple...even though many of them were getting right with God personally and were trying to get the kingdom back in gear, Israel never became a world power again because the Devil had the kingdom and he was not about to give it to the Jews. God wanted the Jews to have it, and the Devil does everything AGAINST what God wants.

Now we come to the book of Malachi, the last book written in the Old testament, around 397 BC. For the next four hundred years there was no revelation, and God was silent.

When Israel went back to the land in Ezra and Nehemiah, she was still under the thumb of some Gentile power. This period of time is where all the history books begin in school. This was where all the cultures and philosophies which you study started, such as the Babylonians, the Persians, Alexander the Great and the culture with their philosophers: Aristotle, Plato, and Socrates. The "philosophers" showed up during the period when God was silent (that figures). The Roman culture began to develop. At the end of this four hundred years, Israel was under the domination of Rome.

Then, lo and behold, up showed John the Baptist. He stepped out of the wilderness in his bare feet and leather girdle with locusts hanging out of his beard, and announced:

**“The kingdom of heaven is at hand.”**

In another place he said:

**“The kingdom of God is at hand.”**

## Chapter 6 - Old Testament Survey

Of course, people immediately say, “Oh, they must be the same.” No! They were both present at the same time. They were both present in the first Adam, and they were both present in the second Adam. Remember the consistency of the Bible? That is why you find the terms “kingdom of God” and “kingdom of heaven” used interchangeably in the gospels. The man who is king over both kingdoms was on this earth. That is an outline of the Old Testament. Now we need to bridge the gap into the New Testament and put the Bible together in its entirety. That will be the subject of the next chapter.

## Chapter 6 - Old Testament Survey

# Chapter 7

## New Testament Survey

*When they therefore were come together, they asked of him, saying, Lord, wilt thou at this time restore again the kingdom to Israel?*

**Acts 1:6**

You might wonder why I used the above verse to introduce this chapter. Acts 1:6 is the question around which the entire New Testament pivots. Without a clear understanding of this question and its answer, you can never really understand the plan of God in the New Testament. I trust by the time we are finished with this chapter, you will see this clearly.

The Bible, of course, is divided into the Old Testament and the New Testament. One of the major reasons for this is to show you one of the clear divisions in God's dealings with mankind. In the Old Testament, God dealt with nations. Of course, there are books which carry men's names, like Isaiah, Daniel, Jeremiah, Ezra, etc., but those men all preach against the sins of the nation of Israel and deal with other nations such as Babylon and Media-Persia in their relationship to Israel.

The governmental structure is defined in the book of Genesis. In Exodus, a group of people are called out of Egypt, and we see the birth of the nation of Israel. Of course, all kinds of inspirational applications can be made; however, historically and doctrinally, in the Old Testament God dealt with nations.

In the New Testament, it is different: God deals with individuals. That is why salvation in the Old Testament is not the same as it is in the New Testament.

Of course, when I say that, immediately people get upset and say, "You mean a person couldn't get saved in the Old Testament?" Obviously they could, but they

## Chapter 7 - New Testament Survey

didn't get “saved” like you and I got saved. The Church is not a nation, it is a body of individuals. You were put into the body of Christ the day you got saved: you were not put into a nation of people.

There are several other things separating the Old Testament from the New Testament, but that is the major division. You should always remember that.

With that in mind, I want to show you something about the New Testament which you probably have never been taught. I realize what I am about to say will be extremely hard for some people to take, and most educators won't buy this for five minutes, but even the ORDER of the books in the New Testament is designed to teach you something if you are paying attention.

Many people have a tough time with that, because the order of the books wasn't established until about 1200 AD. In fact, the Geneva Bible was the first English translation with a structured order to the books in the Bible. If you don't want to believe the order of the books in the Bible was arranged by God for a purpose, fine...then, I will show you one of the most amazing “coincidences” in history. Either way you want it is OK with me.

The order of the books in the New Testament is:

<b>Matthew</b>	<b>Ephesians</b>	<b>Hebrews</b>
<b>Mark</b>	<b>Philippians</b>	<b>James</b>
<b>Luke</b>	<b>Colossians</b>	<b>1Peter</b>
<b>John</b>	<b>1Thessalonians</b>	<b>2Peter</b>
<b>Acts</b>	<b>2Thessalonians</b>	<b>1John</b>
<b>Romans</b>	<b>1Timothy</b>	<b>2John</b>
<b>1Corinthians</b>	<b>2Timothy</b>	<b>3John</b>
<b>2Corinthians</b>	<b>Titus</b>	<b>Jude</b>
<b>Galatians</b>	<b>Philemon</b>	<b>Revelation</b>

The average person doesn't pay any attention to that at all. They have no concept of how the order of the books in the New Testament can teach them something. But before we are finished with this chapter, I will show you how it DOES make a difference.

### **Matthew, Mark, Luke, and John**

Let's look at the four gospels first: Matthew. Mark. Luke, and John. These four books bridge the Old Testament to the New Testament.



## Chapter 7 - New Testament Survey

In Matthew, Jesus Christ is portrayed as the King of the Jews. In Mark, the Lord Jesus Christ is portrayed as a servant. In Luke, He is portrayed as the Son of Man in His earthly ministry to the nation of Israel, and it shows the humanity of Christ. In John, He is portrayed as the Son of God which deals with His deity.

These four books deal with the reinstatement of the kingdom of heaven. They introduce the Messiah, set the stage for the second coming of Christ, and tell you about the death, burial, and resurrection of the Lord Jesus Christ.

These books portray Christ in four different ways, but the book you must understand first is Matthew. If you understand Matthew doctrinally, Mark, Luke, and John will fall into line. You must be very careful in Matthew, because Matthew is the book which really makes the transition between the two testaments. That is why it is placed first. Literally millions of people have hit Matthew head on, stumbled over it, broken their necks and died to face an eternity in Hell. Matthew is one of the books from which almost every heresy taught today originated. The first thing you must realize is there are no Christians in Matthew. The events in Matthew, up until Matthew 27:50. all take place under the Old Testament. Hebrews 9:16-17 says a testament is not in force until the death of the testator.

At the same time, I should clarify myself. I don't want to slide it all one way. Even though the book deals with the nation of Israel, and there are no Christians present, please don't misunderstand me. You find many Christian principles which you can apply to your life, just as you can with any passage of scripture. What you must never forget are the three different applications of scripture which work everywhere in the Bible. The application you must **FIRST** concern yourself with is doctrine. Your Bible will never make sense if your doctrine isn't straight. You must be sure you understand clearly what the Bible is specifically teaching before you run off halfcocked into all kinds of wild applications.

What is the doctrinal context of Matthew? As I told you earlier, it is Christ presenting Himself as the king of Israel to the nation of Israel, **NOT** to Christians. So you must be careful of anybody trying to take anything out of Matthew and applying it to you directly. Once you understand that, you begin to see where so many people get messed up.

With that said, of course there are some things you need to understand about Matthew. As I have said, there are no Christians in Matthew. Yet there are thousands of liberal preachers who preach what is called the "social gospel" from Matthew 5-7 commonly called the Sermon on the Mount. They teach this as the

## Chapter 7 - New Testament Survey

plan of salvation for Christians while there are no Christians present in the passage. These are the “do-gooders” - do unto others before they do unto you.

That's the liberal philosophy of today: help your fellow man. Every pre-millennial and fundamental organization from the 1700's and 1800's that is messed up today has fallen for the social gospel.

The classic example is the Salvation Army - founded by General William Booth. William Booth was a street preacher who would tear your hide off in fifteen minutes. He believed the word of God, taught the word of God, and had a genuine burden for lost souls. If General Booth came back today and walked through any Salvation Army place in America, he would have a heart attack before he got past the first ash tray! They have totally apostatized with the social gospel, and have lost the soul-winning zeal they once had. All they think about now is helping people's physical needs, passing out food, giving out clothes, and being in areas of disaster...and absolutely **NOTHING** is being done like it was to reach man's soul.

All the liberal churches have gone the same way. There was a time years ago when a sinner could go to the average Methodist church, the preacher would tear him up through the plain preaching of the word of God, and he would say, “I'm not going back there anymore. That guy steps on my toes. I'm going over to the Presbyterian church.”

He would go to the Presbyterian church and the preacher would get up on Sunday morning and clean his clock. He'd say, “I'm not going back there, I'm going over to the Baptist church.”

About the time he would walk into the Baptist church, someone would tell him he was lost and headed for an eternity in the lake of Fire, and out he would run again. There was no rest for a sinner, no easy place to hide.

Today, if you go to a church and get your poor little feelings hurt by something the mean, nasty preacher says, you can go to any one of a hundred different churches in your town and hear whatever you want to hear to make you happy.

Many of my people tell me they have trouble getting their friends to come back once they have come and heard preaching about their favorite sin. That is because they get under conviction. I had a guy tell me one time he tried to bring a friend of his from a dead church and after bringing him two or three times he said, “I don't want to go back there.”

My friend asked, “Why not?”

## Chapter 7 - New Testament Survey

The guy answered, "I feel too uncomfortable there. I want to go back over to my church where I feel comfortable."

If you are going to a church where you feel comfortable when you are preached to, you had better check it out. That church may be dead and ready to be buried, and you may get buried with it.

When you are exposed to the preaching of the word of God, you shouldn't feel comfortable. You say, "Well, all my sins are confessed, I'm right with God, and I'm enjoying my salvation."

Great! Go ahead and feel comfortable then about yourself, but don't feel comfortable about people dying and going to Hell. There should never be a time when you feel comfortable, because when you get comfortable you get satisfied...and when you get satisfied, you get and indifferent...and you end up in apostasy.

That is exactly what has happened to liberal churches of today through the sweet, soft, bland, "preaching" of the do-gooders' social gospel. Of course their base text comes from one of the most dangerous books in the Bible, Matthew.

Let's go a little further now in Matthew and look at some more reasons you must be careful.

In Matthew 12, the corporate nation of Israel, through their leaders, commits the "unpardonable sin". They saw the Lord Jesus Christ perform all those miracles, proving He was their Messiah, and they rejected Him. They accused Him of doing the miracles by the power of Satan. When they did that, God said, "OK boys, you have just cut your own throats." (Modern translation in "living language".)

The kingdom of heaven being offered to them, which Jesus had just preached about in the Sermon on the Mount (chapters 5 through 7), now goes into a series of mysteries called "parables." I call them "terribles" because so many people get messed up on them. The very next chapter, chapter 13, details the majority of these parables.

I took a course one time in a church which was offering studies in the book of Matthew. I took the course because I thought they would be able to teach me something. When they reached Matthew 13, the instructor said, "Let me give you the definition of a parable: A parable is an earthly truth veiled in a heavenly language."

## Chapter 7 - New Testament Survey

Everyone listening to that thought, “Wow, that is really good. I'll have to remember that.” For a minute I thought to myself, “That's profound.” If you said that to a group of people, they would think you really knew something.

But whenever someone starts defining things in the Bible, you better search the scriptures to make sure, his definition lines up with what the word of God says. As I read Matthew 13, I found out exactly what the parables are for, and why Jesus gave them, and it wasn't what that man said. A parable is an exact infallible truth given in veiled form for the express purpose of messing somebody up who comes to God dishonestly and rejects what the Bible says.

Remember now, in the previous chapter (Matthew 12) Israel rejected the Lord Jesus Christ and accused Him of being full of the devil. The very next chapter (Matthew 13) begins:

***The same day went Jesus out of the house, and sat by the sea side.***

**Matthew 13:1**

Notice this takes place the SAME DAY as chapter 12. Jesus **immediately** begins speaking in parables. In Matthew 13:10, His disciples asked, “Why speakest thou unto them in parables?”

Jesus didn't answer them the way that “instructor” answered: look at what He said:

***He answered and said unto them, Because it is given unto you to know the mysteries of the kingdom of heaven, but to them it is not given.***

***For whosoever hath, to him shall be given, and he shall have more abundance: but whosoever hath not, from him shall be taken away even that he hath.***

***Therefore speak I to them in parables: because they seeing see not; and hearing they hear not, neither do they understand.***

***And in them is fulfilled the prophecy of Esaias, which saith, By hearing ye shall hear, and shall not understand; and seeing ye shall see, and shall not perceive:***

***For this people's heart is waxed gross, and their ears are dull of hearing, and their eyes they have closed; lest at any time they should see with their eyes, and hear with their ears, and should understand with their heart, and should be converted, and I should heal them. But blessed are your eyes, for they see: and your ears, for they hear.***

*For verily I say unto you, That many prophets and righteous men have desired to see those things which ye see, and have not seen them; and to hear those things which ye hear, and have not heard them.*

**Matthew 13:11-17**

The Lord Jesus Christ gave those parables specifically for the purpose of tripping up the educated religious leaders of His day. You say, “God wouldn't do a thing like that: He is a God of love and truth and mercy.” Read the passage again:

*He answered and said unto them, Because it is given unto you to know the mysteries of the kingdom of heaven, but to them it is not given.*

*For whosoever hath, to him shall be given, and he shall have more abundance: but whosoever hath not, from him shall be taken away even that he hath.*

*Therefore speak I to them in parables: because they seeing see not; and hearing they hear not, neither do they understand.*

*And in them is fulfilled the prophecy of Esaias, which saith, By hearing ye shall hear, and shall not understand; and seeing ye shall see, and shall not perceive:*

*For this people's heart is waxed gross, and their ears are dull of hearing, and their eyes they have closed; lest at any time they should see with their eyes, and hear with their ears, and should understand with their heart, and should be converted, and I should heal them. But blessed are your eyes, for they see: and your ears, for they hear.*

*For verily I say unto you, That many prophets and righteous men have desired to see those things which ye see, and have not seen them; and to hear those things which ye hear, and have not heard them.*

**Matthew 13:11-17**

Now, what was that you saying?

Jesus gave an exact infallible truth in parable form to mess them up because they rejected the word of God. What do you think will happen to you when you come to the word of God with a preconceived idea of what you want to believe and try to make the scriptures fit your beliefs? You will get in the same mess Israel did.

Notice in verses 16-17 the Lord, Jesus Christ said the disciples could understand what He was saying because their eyes and ears were open and sensitive to what He said. If you simply **BELIEVE** what you read, God will show you the truth! If

## Chapter 7 - New Testament Survey

you don't, you are wasting your time and you might as well go out and get drunk; it will do a lot less damage than messing around rejecting the word of God. Now there are twelve parables on the kingdom of heaven in Matthew, corresponding to the twelve tribes of the nation of Israel. They deal with Israel's rejection of the Messiah, and doctrinally have absolutely nothing to do with a Christian.

Now please don't misunderstand me, you can make inspirational applications, but you must be very careful how far you try to apply things in Matthew to Christians because the book is not addressed to Christians.

Now let's go on a little further in Matthew and I will show you a classic example of this using a passage which almost every Bible “teacher” in the world uses to prove Christians can lose their salvation.

***Then shall the kingdom of heaven be likened unto ten virgins, which took their lamps, and went forth to meet the bridegroom.***

***And five of them were wise, and five were foolish.***

***They that were foolish took their lamps, and took no oil with them: But the wise took oil in their vessels with their lamps.***

***While the bridegroom tarried, they all slumbered and slept.***

***And at midnight there was a cry made, Behold, the bridegroom cometh; go ye out to meet him.***

***Then all those virgins arose, and trimmed their lamps.***

***And the foolish said unto the wise, Give us of your oil; for our lamps are gone out.***

***But the wise answered, saying, Not so; lest there be not enough for us and you: but go ye rather to them that sell, and buy for yourselves.***

***And while they went to buy, the bridegroom came; and they that were ready went in with him to the marriage: and the door was shut.***

***Afterward came also the other virgins, saying, Lord, Lord, open to us.***

***But he answered and said, Verily I say unto you, I know you not.***

***Watch therefore, for ye know neither the day nor the hour wherein the Son of man cometh.***

**Matthew 25:1-13**

A student of the word of God is to find out what the Bible SAYS. In chapter 3, I gave you a list of basic rules of Bible study. The very first rule was to determine the **CONTEXT**. So let's look at Matthew 25:1 and determine the context:

***Then shall the kingdom of heaven be likened unto....***

Immediately I know the context of this passage is the kingdom of heaven, because I am able to read sixth grade English. We have already seen from a previous chapter that the kingdom of heaven is the earthly, Jewish kingdom with Jesus Christ on the throne of Israel at Jerusalem.

Of course, most people believe the kingdom of heaven and the kingdom of God are the same. Because they are used interchangeably at times in the New Testament, they just assume they are identical. You should never assume anything in the word of God.

One time during basic training in the army, I didn't do something I was supposed to do, because I thought someone else would take care of it. My drill sergeant asked why I didn't do it. As all young recruits, I was paralyzed at this guy standing 9'10", looking down my throat. I said, "Well, sir, I just assumed it would get done."

He took that word, "assume", and for the next ten minutes gave me a detailed description of the word which I would love to share with you, but fortunately God saved me, cleaned up my vocabulary, and I don't talk that way anymore.

I never forgot that. I learned something that day: **NEVER ASSUME ANYTHING**. A little later on in life, I learned something FAR more important than not assuming in the army, and that is not assuming in the word of God. The worst thing that can happen to you if you assume wrong in the army is you can get killed. If you assume wrong in the word of God, you could spend eternity in a Lake of Fire.

Some of you know people who assume they are going to heaven. Many Christians assume God's will is going to just find its way into their life some day by accident. Don't ever assume.

The context of Matthew 25:1-13 is the Jewish kingdom of heaven to be established when Jesus Christ returns to this earth. For someone to teach Christians can lose their salvation from that passage is ridiculous. There are no Christians in the passage.

So be careful in the book of Matthew; it will get you messed up if you don't watch every word carefully. The purpose of the first four books of the New Testament is to bridge the gap between the Old and New Testaments, and to reveal the life and

ministry of the Lord Jesus Christ.

## **The Acts of the Apostles**

The next book is the Acts of the Apostles. This is another transitional book in the Bible, like Matthew and Hebrews. Again, you must be very careful in Acts, just as in Matthew. I guess there are probably more people dead and in Hell through the twisting of verses in Acts and Matthew than all the booze, drugs, sex and ungodly sins of the flesh throughout history. If you owned a bar, you would probably only be able to mess up maybe twenty thousand people at the most in a lifetime. The average gambling casino probably doesn't reach more than about five hundred thousand people as far as ruining their lives and sending them to Hell. But let a religion with bad doctrine sit around for about two hundred years, and there will be literally millions of people dying and going to Hell because of it.

That's why Jesus said in Matthew 23 that false religious leaders would receive the greater damnation. Why? Because unsaved religious leaders deceive people by the millions.

If you want to see a fish fry, just wait until the great white throne judgment when the unsaved religious leaders of the ages stand before God in judgment and find out just how many people they led astray. Imagine the reception some of those guys will get when a million people end up burning in the lake of fire for all eternity because of the false doctrine they taught. It makes me shudder to think of it.

We will spend a good bit of time in the Acts of the Apostles, because it is probably the most important book in the entire Bible for a Christian to understand properly. In fact, if you never understand the book of Acts and can't literally take it apart verse by verse and put it back together and get all the pieces right, then you will have trouble with the rest of the Bible, especially the New Testament.

The most important thing to remember about the book of Acts is that it is NOT a doctrinal statement of church theology, but an HISTORICAL account of ACTS of the Apostles. That's where the name of the book comes from! The most important application of any verse in Acts is the historical application, because that is the purpose of the book. It is an historical account of how God made the transition from the Jewish Old Testament structure to the New Testament church age where Jew and Gentile are one in Christ. The book of Acts brings you through a transition from God dealing with a nation to God dealing with individuals. It



covers the transition from God dealing primarily with the Jews to God dealing primarily with Gentiles. Then there is the transition from Peter's ministry in chapters 1-12 to Paul's ministry in chapters 13-28. (This is where the expression "Robbing Peter to pay Paul" comes from.) Paul is the apostle to the Gentiles. God has dropped the nation of Israel temporarily through a transitional period.

That is why the historical application of the book of Acts is so important. Before you can determine where the doctrinal application fits, you must determine exactly where you are in the transition, or you will be misapplying the doctrine.

**WITH THAT IN MIND**, let's go back to the Old Testament historically, pick up where we left off, and bring the story through the New Testament. Remember, now, the main story line or theme of the Bible is the second coming of Jesus Christ to establish His kingdom. Let's review the men so far.

It begins with Adam. He had both kingdoms, but lost one. It next goes to Noah, then to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. From Jacob it passes to Judah, then to Moses and to Joshua, then into the Judges, and into the established kingdom under the kings. It starts with the bad king Saul, then to David the good king. Solomon then gets the kingdom and it passes through his sons down to the last one, Jeconiah. His name is changed to Coniah and his seed is cursed; and after Zedekiah is carried to Babylon, the times of the Gentiles begin. That is the Old Testament historically.

The next person to show up is John the Baptist. He arrives six months ahead of the Lord Jesus Christ preaching about the coming of the King of the Jews. Then comes Jesus Himself, who is a double king. He is called the King of the Jews and the Son of God, and He is the only man since Adam who is king over both kingdoms. The difference, however, is he won't lose either one of them.

When Jesus shows up in Matthew, Mark, Luke, and John, He and His disciples preach the kingdom of heaven. That is why, in the gospels, and in the early part of Acts, the only people ministered to are Jews. Of course, the kingdom of God is mentioned also because they are both here, but the actual ministry is dealing with the earthly kingdom and focused on the Jews.

In Matthew 12, the nation of Israel commits the unpardonable sin, rejecting the kingdom, and in chapter 13, the teaching of the kingdom goes into a series of parables.

You will find the Jews had three chances to get the kingdom of heaven in the New

## Chapter 7 - New Testament Survey

Testament. The first one was John the Baptist. In Matthew 3 and Luke 3, John came preaching the kingdom of heaven. Of course, the Jews didn't like his preaching so they killed him. The next chance was Jesus Himself. Jesus came saying, "I am the Messiah." Of course, they killed Him also; however, if you study very carefully what took place as the nation of Israel formally rejected their Messiah by killing Him on the cross of Calvary, you will see that He lifted His eyes to heaven and said, "Father forgive them, they know not what they do."

Of course, that verse is so misunderstood. People think Jesus was just being so nice to forgive the world for doing Him wrong. He wasn't concerned about "the world" at this point; in fact, the very night of His betrayal in John 17:9 He prayed to the Father, "I pray NOT for the world." Instead He is saying, "These Jews don't understand they are killing the Messiah and are going to lose the kingdom."

So God honored His request on the cross. The Jews killed Jesus, but they got one more chance for the kingdom.

That brings us through Matthew, Mark, Luke, and John. John the Baptist was their first chance for the kingdom; they killed him - out went the first chance. They killed Jesus Christ - there went the second chance. But on the cross He forgave them, and they got one more chance. (You get three strikes before you are out!) That chance is found in the early part of the book of Acts. Let's begin in Acts chapter one.

In verse 3, Jesus was talking to the disciples about things pertaining to the kingdom of God. But look at verse 6:

***When they therefore were come together, they asked of him, saying, Lord, wilt thou at this time restore again the kingdom to Israel?***

Chapter 1 verse 6 is the theme of the book of Acts. This is the question around which the entire book of Acts is built, as well as the entire New Testament. Those disciples were looking for Jesus to restore the literal kingdom just as it was in Kings and Chronicles. The first few chapters of Acts have nothing to do with church age Christians. You don't see anybody running out and starting the Jerusalem Baptist Church. There are no bus ministries, or Bible Colleges, or Christian day schools, or tent revivals in the early part of Acts. Instead, there is a group of Jews preaching a second coming message, getting a bunch of other Jews "saved", and they are all congregating in Jerusalem in a communistic church getting ready for the Lord to return.

So the disciples asked the question, “Wilt thou at this time restore again the kingdom to Israel?” I showed you earlier how this was a very reasonable, logical, intelligent question asked by a group of the greatest Old Testament “scholars” who ever lived.

But Jesus doesn't give them a specific answer. Look at His answer:

***And he said unto them, It is not for you to know the times or the seasons, which the Father hath put in his own power.***

***But ye shall receive power, after that the Holy Ghost is come upon you: and ye shall be witnesses unto me both in Jerusalem, and in all Judaea, and in Samaria, and unto the uttermost part of the earth.***

**Acts 1:7-8**

Here is where individual words in the Bible are very important. When the Jews asked Jesus if He was going to restore the kingdom to Israel, Jesus said, “It is not for you to know the TIMES or the SEASONS which the Father has placed in his power.”

But look at what Paul says to the church in Thessalonica:

***But of the TIMES and the SEASONS, brethren, ye have no need that I write unto you.***

***For yourselves know perfectly that the day of the Lord so cometh as a thief in the night.***

***For when they shall say, Peace and safety; then sudden destruction cometh upon them, as travail upon a woman with child; and they shall not escape.***

**1Thessalonians 5:1-3**

In 1Thessalonians, Paul tells the church they don't have to wonder about the TIMES and the SEASONS, because they are clear to us. Back in Acts 1, Jesus told the disciples it wasn't for them to know at that time. Why? Because something else was going on, there was a condition placed on the answer. What Jesus is saying here is, in essence, “Look, guys, I'm not going to talk to you about restoring the kingdom now, because it depends on what the nation of Israel does with their last chance.”

Let's follow the progression and see what they do with their last chance. In Acts 2, Peter delivered his famous Pentecost message concluding with Acts 2:38, one of

## Chapter 7 - New Testament Survey

the best verses in the Bible to go to Hell on:

***Then Peter said unto them, Repent, and be baptized every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ for the remission of sins, and ye shall receive the gift of the Holy Ghost.***

Thousands of people teach this is Gentile salvation. There were no Gentiles in the audience when Peter preached that message. Look at verse 36. the punch line of his message:

***Therefore let ALL THE HOUSE OF ISRAEL know assuredly, that God hath made that same Jesus, whom ye have crucified, both Lord and Christ.***

Now look at their response in verse 37:

***Now when they heard this, they were pricked in their heart, and said unto Peter and to the rest of the apostles, Men and brethren, what shall we do?***

You must be very careful **never** to add any words to the Bible. **Proverbs 30:6** says:

***Add thou not unto his words, lest he reprove thee, and thou be found a liar.***

The question asked in Acts 2:37 is: “Men and brethren, WHAT SHALL WE DO?”

No one was asking how to be saved in Acts 2:37. Instead, they were asking what they should do since they crucified the Messiah. So Peter told them in verse 38.

In the rest of the chapter, we see some of the Jews doing what Peter said to do. In the next few chapters, we see God sending out a group of preachers and apostles headed up by Peter. They didn't go to the Gentiles, instead they went to the Jews and said, “You crucified the Messiah, don't you understand that?” They were trying to convert the Jews so they could get the kingdom.

Read the messages preached by these men in Acts chapters 3, 4, and 5. They are all second coming messages preached in Jerusalem to Jews for the express purpose of getting them to believe in Jesus as the Messiah.

Israel's last chance is coming up. In Acts 6, a man named Stephen was picked as a “deacon” of the church. In Acts 7 he preached to the leaders of the corporate nation of Israel. When Stephen preached his famous message, he ended up being

one of history's greatest wipeouts in the ministry as far as man's viewpoint is concerned; however, "that which is highly esteemed among men is abomination in the sight of God." (Luke 16:15) When Stephen preached this message, there was not one Gentile in the audience. Look at what he said in Acts 7:2:

***And he said, Men, brethren, and fathers, hearken...***

Men, brethren, and fathers; he was talking to Jews. He went right on in verse 2 and the first person mentioned in his message was Abraham. Everyone in the world knows Abraham was the first Jew. He talked about Israel going down into Egypt in verses 9-16. In verses 17-36, he recounted how Moses delivered the nation of Israel out of Egypt. Stephen didn't make one mention of receiving Jesus Christ as Savior and trusting in His shed blood. He preached a second coming message to the leaders of the nation of Israel and just tore those leaders apart preaching through the entire Old Testament. He preached everything about the nation of Israel from Abraham clear up to Jesus Christ, and just cleaned their clocks. Now look at verses 48-50:

***Howbeit the most High dwelleth not in temples made with hands; as saith the prophet,***

***Heaven is my throne, and earth is my footstool: what house will ye build me? saith the Lord: or what is the place of my rest?***

***Hath not my hand made all these things?***

Don't you know that went over well with the Jews who were trying to keep the Old Testament law? He said, "God doesn't dwell in that temple. The veil was ripped when you crucified Jesus, you boys just sewed it back up." This was a rough message. Look at verse 51:

***Ye stiffnecked and uncircumcised in heart and ears, ye do always resist the Holy Ghost: as your fathers did, so do ye.***

What a "sweet spirit of Christ"! This was quite a message! Look at the next verse:

***Which of the prophets have not your fathers persecuted?...***

There are Ezekiel and Isaiah and Jeremiah being mentioned. There is nothing about the church in here, Stephen was talking to the nation of Israel.

***...and they have slain them which shewed before of the coming of the Just***

***One; of whom ye have been now the betrayers and murderers: Who have received the law by the disposition of angels, and have not kept it.***

**Acts 7:52,53**

Guess who the “Just One” is? It's not the Lone Ranger. He accused them of murdering Jesus Christ. Stephen didn't make too many friends that day. Look at what happened next as the leaders of the nation of Israel reacted to Stephen's message:

***When they heard these things, they were cut to the heart, and they gnashed on him with their teeth.***

They bit him!

***But he, being full of the Holy Ghost, looked up stedfastly into heaven, and saw the glory of God, and Jesus STANDING on the right hand of God, And said, Behold, I see the heavens opened, and the Son of man STANDING on the right hand of God.***

**Acts 7:54-56**

Now wait a minute. In the book of Hebrews it says Jesus is SEATED at the right hand of God. In his message, Stephen quoted Isaiah 66:1 which says, “Heaven is my throne and earth is my footstool.” He is SEATED in that passage, but here He is STANDING.

Now here is where all the cute little preachers get in their two cents worth which is just hilarious to me. I have heard preachers preach Acts 7 and say, “Well, here is Jesus standing up now to welcome this poor martyr home.”

Come on, now. The Bible says God is no respecter of persons. If He stands up for Stephen He has to stand up for everyone who goes in. Do you know how many saints die per hour? He sure isn't getting to sit down much if that is true.

Jesus was not standing up to welcome Stephen home. This was the last chance Israel had to accept the Messiah, and He was standing up because if the Jews had received the preaching of Stephen about crucifying the Messiah, He would have come back. All the Old Testament prophecies were in place. The Jews were in the homeland. The Anti-Christ (Judas) was already in the bottomless pit. The right nation (Rome) was already in power; and had they received the message, Daniel's 70th week would have gone into effect. **Not one** Old Testament verse or prophecy would have been violated if He had come back at that time.

Remember, HISTORICALLY, there was no New Testament written at this time. All they had were Old Testament prophecies concerning the coming of the Lord Jesus Christ. So when they killed Stephen, they lost their third chance, and at that point, the kingdom of heaven went out. There was only one kingdom left again, just like it was in the Old Testament. But instead of the kingdom of heaven being the one left, it was the kingdom of God.

Now the transition begins to take place. Look at what happens in Acts 8:

***Then Philip went down to the city of Samaria, and preached Christ unto them.***

**Acts 8:5**

Samaria is half Jew and half Gentile. The transition has begun. Look at what Philip preached in Samaria:

***But when they believed Philip preaching the things concerning the kingdom of God, and the name of Jesus Christ, they were baptized, both men and women.***

**Acts 8:12**

He was preaching the kingdom of God; the kingdom of heaven was gone.

In Acts 8:27-38 God reached out to the back side of the desert and saved an Ethiopian eunuch, a black man, the first man saved in the Bible exactly the same way you and I get saved. This is the first place in the Bible where God goes into detail to show you how a man is saved by grace through faith in the finished work of Jesus Christ on the cross, through His shed blood, without any type of works, including baptism. The people in **Acts 2**, to whom Peter preached, had to get baptized in order to be saved. The Ethiopian eunuch is a Gentile.

Then in Acts 9, Paul got saved, the apostle to the Gentiles. God sent Ananias to see Paul, and look at what He told Ananias:

***But the Lord said unto him, Go thy way: for he is a chosen vessel unto me, to bear my name before the Gentiles, and kings, and the children of Israel:***

**Acts 9:15**

Notice the GENTILES are listed first. Up until this time, the preaching had been strictly to the Jews, now the main focus moves to the Gentiles. In Acts 10, Cornelius got saved. Cornelius was an Italian centurion - a Gentile. In Acts 11:26, the word "Christian" appears for the first time in the Bible. (Remember what I told you earlier about the importance of the Law of First Mention?)

***And when he had found him, he brought him unto Antioch. And it came to pass, that a whole year they assembled themselves with the church, and taught much people. And the disciples were called Christians first in Antioch.*** Acts 11:26

Antioch was in Syria; it was a Gentile city. In Acts 13, the apostle to the Gentiles (Paul) made his first missionary journey into Asia Minor - Gentile territory. If you don't have the picture by now, you're blind!

From this point on, the kingdom of heaven is never mentioned again in the book of Acts. No one in Jerusalem got healed after Acts 7. Now it is the kingdom of God; the kingdom of heaven went out officially at the death of Stephen.

Let's take it a little farther. One of these days, I will hear the voice of an archangel and the trump of God, and I will be caught up at the rapture of the church. When I go out, the kingdom of God will go out with me. For seven years, there will be no kingdom on this earth again, just like it was from 606 BC to the first coming. This is called the tribulation period. At the end of the tribulation period, Israel will be restored, Jesus Christ will return, and both kingdoms will come back to this earth with Him for the millennium. Revelation 11:15 says, speaking of the second coming:

***And the seventh angel sounded; and there were great voices in heaven, saying, The kingdoms of this world are become the kingdoms of our Lord, and of his Christ; and he shall reign for ever and ever.***

There are both kingdoms again, present with Jesus Christ at the second coming. The entire Bible is wrapped around those two kingdoms. If you don't get those two kingdoms straight in your mind, you will NEVER understand the Bible.

Now remember, Matthew brings you from the Old Testament to the New Testament, and Acts brings you from the Jew to the Gentile. That is very important. That is the reason for the book of the Acts of the Apostles. Never, NEVER, under any circumstances, come to the book of Acts with any other thought in your mind. Don't ever base a church doctrine on the book of Acts; church doctrine is based in the Pauline epistles.

You can find practical applications of Biblical principles, don't misunderstand me. Some of the greatest practical sermons in the word of God come from the book of Acts; however, you must never forget the purpose of the book Acts. It is an historical account of the transitional period between the Old Testament Jews and



the New Testament body of Christ.

## The Pauline Epistles

Let's continue in the New Testament and look at the next section. The Pauline Epistles are divided into two sections. The first section contains:

Romans	Galatians	Colossians
1Corinthians	Ephesians	1Thessalonians
2Corinthians	Philippians	2Thessalonians

This group of books - addressed to churches - comes immediately after the book which takes you from the nation of Israel to the church, from the Jew to the Gentile.

Let me take a wild stab in the dark and test your spiritual IQ to see if you have any spiritual understanding above sub-plant life. Where do you think you should get your church doctrine?

You get it from the books written to the churches. (See how simple the Bible really is when you throw out all the educated trash?)

Here is where you will really begin to see how the order of the books in the Bible can teach you spiritual truth. Of course, first and foremost is the book of Romans, the greatest book in the Bible on church age doctrine. You will find every problem the church will ever encounter in those books I just listed, with Romans being the focal point. Every church situation, every type of sin, how to deal with any problem, how to deal with other believers, how to deal with any relationship...it's all covered in these books.

The problems of a carnal church are laid out in 1Corinthians. The church is really identified and explained in Galatians, Ephesians, Philippians, and Colossians. 1<sup>st</sup> and 2<sup>nd</sup> Thessalonians talk about the coming of the Lord in relationship to the church and covers the end of the church age.

Romans is the king pin. In fact, all the rest of the books in the list are really dealing with subjects which have already been discussed to some degree in the book of Romans. Because of that, I will give you a quick outline of the book of Romans:

## Chapter 7 - New Testament Survey

- ROMANS 1** God shows how the Gentiles are in a mess because of sin.
- ROMANS 2** Teaches the Jews are in the same kind of mess.
- ROMANS 3** Goes into detail describing how the Old Testament law and the following of your conscience won't solve the mess the Jews and the Gentiles got into in chapters 1&2.
- ROMANS 4&5** Deal together with God's answer to the mess of sin, and why it is the right answer. He tells why being justified by faith is the answer and not all this other stuff men are trying to do.

Romans 6-8 deals with different aspects of a Christian being dead in Christ. Of course when I say that, I am not talking about physical death, but the spiritual death which takes place at the time of salvation.

- ROMANS 6** Deals with a Christian's death in relation to sin.
- ROMANS 7** Covers the Christian's death in relation to the Old Testament law.
- ROMANS 8** Deals with the death of the Christian in relation to the future life and the redemption of the body. Of course, Romans 8 is a great chapter on the spiritual body.

In Romans 9-11, Paul devotes three chapters to the Jews, just so you won't forget God is not finished with His chosen people. In Revelation 2 and 3, the Bible blasts a group of people who say they are Jews when they are not. It calls them liars, and of the synagogue of Satan.

A common false teaching today is that God is finished with the nation of Israel, and all those Old Testament promises are to be applied to the church (specifically their church). Of course that teaching is manifest today through the Roman Catholic Church. Garner Ted Armstrong, "British Israelism," and all the other junk they put out teaching that they have taken the place of the nation of Israel. Paul uses those three chapters to deal specifically with us as believers in our relationship to the nation of Israel.

Of course, you must be careful, because we are spiritual Jews because we have been born again into Christ who was a Jew. But that is spiritual, not physical. Don't ever make the mistake of believing the literal promises given to the Jews are to be literally given to you. God promised them to Abraham unconditionally.

The reason the Roman Catholic Church tries to dominate the world politically is because they believe they have taken the place of the Jews. That is why Garner Ted Armstrong teaches all the promises to Israel are to be applied to his church now. He puts out the "Plain Truth" magazine, which is not very plain and it certainly isn't truth. Of course, both groups deceive billions of people.

**ROMANS 9** Paul gives an explanation of God's dealing with Israel.

**ROMANS 10** Paul shows how even though God started out dealing with the Jew, he has also called the Gentile and they are one together now in Christ.

Romans 10 is the greatest chapter in the Bible to use to lead somebody to Christ. In that chapter are many great verses such as **Romans 10:9-10**:

*That if thou shalt confess with thy mouth the Lord Jesus, and shalt believe in thine heart that God hath raised him from the dead, thou shalt be saved. For with the heart man believeth unto righteousness; and with the mouth confession is made unto salvation.*

And **Romans 10:13**:

*For whosoever shall call upon the name of the Lord shall be saved.*

Of course he contrasts how God has dealt with the nation of Israel in the past, and how God has sent out the salvation call to the Gentiles in this age.

**ROMANS 11** This is without a doubt the greatest chapter in the New Testament on the restoration of the nation of Israel.

**ROMANS 12** Deals with a Christian's relationship to other people, saved and lost, by presenting your body as a living sacrifice.

**ROMANS 13** Covers the Christian's relationship to his government.

**ROMANS 14-15** Deals with a Christian's relationship to other Christians.

**ROMANS 16** The closing to Paul's letter.

The first book of this group, Romans, is set up in such a way it lays out all the doctrines, because when you get to 1<sup>st</sup> and 2<sup>nd</sup> Corinthians the church is in a mess again. Let's look at 1Corinthians, and we will see this clearly.

Now, I would never base a church doctrine out of the book of 1Corinthians. Somebody says, "Wait a minute, you just said those books are for the church."

## Chapter 7 - New Testament Survey

Yes, but 1Corinthians is the book on what NOT to do. In fact, you can't find one chapter in 1Corinthians where Paul doesn't chew them out for something. Let's outline the book and you will see this:

- 1COR. 1** They were arguing over who baptized who.
- 1COR. 2** Paul chewed them out for acting like unsaved men. He said, "The natural man receiveth not the things of the Spirit of God."
- 1COR. 3** They were arguing about who won who to Christ.
- 1COR. 4** They were not being faithful stewards of the mysteries of God.
- 1COR. 5** There was fornication going on.
- 1COR. 6** They were taking each other to court over legal matters which could be taken care of in the church.
- 1COR. 7** They were messed up on the concept of marriage.
- 1COR. 8** They were messed up on meat offered to idols.
- 1COR. 9** They were messed up on their liberty in Christ
- 1COR. 10** Paul went back and gave them Old Testament examples to try to straighten them out.

*Now all these things happened unto them for ensamples: and they are written for our admonition, upon whom the ends of the world are come. Wherefore let him that thinketh he standeth take heed lest he fall.*

**1Corinthians 10:11-12**

- 1COR. 11** They were messed up on "women's lib", and on the Lord's Supper.
- 1COR. 12** They were messed up on spiritual gifts.
- 1COR. 13** They were messed up on charity.
- 1COR. 14** They were messed up on tongues
- 1COR. 15** They were messed up on the resurrection.
- 1COR. 16** They were messed up on the collection for the saints: they were not giving.

You can see they were a messed up bunch! Somebody who tries to base positive doctrine out of a negative book is going to wind up in trouble. You must learn how those books fit in. I like to read 1Corinthians often because you will find every mess Baptists get into. The book of 1Corinthians should be the Baptist

National Anthem. The more I read the word of God and the more I am around Christians, the more I realize how much of the junk done in the name of Christ in America is done in the flesh. The power of God isn't anywhere around. So all the problems are in the book of 1 Corinthians and you can have a great time studying them.

The next books in this section, Galatians, Ephesians, Philippians, and Colossians, deal with the inner structure of the church. Galatians deals with justification by faith, and how a man is kept saved by the power of God without works. In Ephesians the church is defined. In Philippians, Paul covers rejoicing in the Lord regardless of your state, and gives you the practical application of the New Testament church age truths in your everyday life. Colossians, again, covers many of the doctrines found in the books of Ephesians and Romans.

The last books in this section, 1<sup>st</sup> and 2<sup>nd</sup> Thessalonians, deal with the doctrine of the end times as it relates to the church.

The second section of the Pauline Epistles includes:

1 Timothy

Titus

2 Timothy

Philemon

These books are not written to churches, but to people. They give you Christian doctrine on a personal level. Timothy and Titus were direct converts of Paul. Although the Bible never says specifically that Paul won Philemon to the Lord, if he didn't, he still had a tremendous influence on him; and he definitely won his slave, Onesimus, to the Lord. That is very important, because at least three of them were won to Christ by Paul, and the fourth one had a real strong connection. That means those books will be personal to you, and will give you the personal instruction a spiritual father would give to his spiritual son. You can put yourself in those people's place and get the personal application.

In 1<sup>st</sup> and 2<sup>nd</sup> Timothy, Paul spends a great deal of time cautioning Timothy about false doctrine and traps Christians can fall into. But the main purpose of these two books is Paul's personal instruction to Timothy to prepare him for the ministry - and don't forget, every single born-again believer in the world has been given some ministry by God which only he can carry out. 1<sup>st</sup> and 2<sup>nd</sup> Timothy deal with the personal instructions for the ministry of the believers, and with your personal instructions and accountability as a Christian in the service of God.

Titus and Philemon both deal with service. Titus deals with a Christian's service

## Chapter 7 - New Testament Survey

within the established structure of the church. Philemon covers your service to the Lord Jesus Christ as a bond slave. Onesimus was a runaway slave of Philemon's who Paul led to Christ and sent back to his master. God made you and owns you, but there was a time when you ran from Him to “do your own thing”. After you were saved, you were sent back to the Lord Jesus Christ to be His servant. The Bible says if you are saved, you are not your own, you are bought with a price. You are a bond slave of the Lord Jesus Christ.

That is the purpose of these four books, to show you your personal accountability as a Christian to God on a personal level.

### **Hebrews, James, 1<sup>st</sup> & 2<sup>nd</sup> Peter**

The next group of books is:

Hebrews	1Peter
James	2Peter

In this group, Hebrews is another transitional book. The three most dangerous and difficult books of the New Testament are those three transitional books, Matthew, Acts, and Hebrews, because the primary doctrinal emphasis is going through a change. Matthew brings you from the Old Testament to the New Testament; Acts brings you from the Jew to the Gentile; and Hebrews goes from the church to the tribulation period.

Notice how even the name of this book, “Hebrews”, breaks up the order of the books. The previous thirteen books, all written by Paul, each carried the name of a church or an individual saved person. Hebrews is addressed to Hebrews - Jews. Be very careful in any transitional book. James is written to the twelve tribes (James 1:1), and Peter is the apostle to the Jews, so all four of these books will have a particularly Jewish slant, some more than others. These books give the church the information it needs to know as the church age winds down and gets ready to make the transition into the tribulation period. The church doesn't go through the tribulation period. The church is not translated in, it is translated out. This group of books primarily brings the Jews from the restoration of the land through the last days of Christianity, and back into the tribulation.

Let me clarify something. I don't want you to think that just these books are essentially Jewish in nature, you can't find any truths in them to apply to your life. Obviously you can. What I am giving you here are the essential divisions of the

New Testament. The book of James, practically speaking, is one of the Greatest books in the Bible for everyday Christian living. However, doctrinally, in James 5, Job is mentioned (a picture of the tribulation), Elijah is in there shutting up the period heavens for three and one-half years just as it will take place in the tribulation), and there are numerous other references all through the book about the events of the tribulation. Hebrews is full of Christian principles. 1<sup>st</sup> and 2<sup>nd</sup> Peter have even more wonderful truths for this age. But what I am saying is the DOCTRINAL application is primarily dealing with the nation of Israel, and you must keep that straight in your mind. **Remember, you will never be able to make a proper inspirational application to your life until you get your doctrine straight.**

### 1<sup>st</sup>, 2<sup>nd</sup>, & 3<sup>rd</sup> John

Here we begin to see how the individual disciples' names can provide the basic context. Peter will always, in some way, deal with Israel; Paul is the apostle to the Gentiles; and John always represents the church. John was the one who was “raptured” out in Revelation 4:1 and wrote about the events of that time. John was the “beloved” disciple, the one leaning on Jesus' breast next to His heart at the Last Supper. John was the special one of the twelve. He was the only one who fulfilled all the obligations and never forsook Jesus. Peter denied Him, James ran off and left Him, the others all forsook Him and fled...but John went all the way to the cross.

I tell young Christians when they first get saved to read 1<sup>st</sup>, 2<sup>nd</sup>, and 3<sup>rd</sup> John. Most people might think I said that because I just felt like it was a good place to start. No, there is a reason for it. 1<sup>st</sup>, 2<sup>nd</sup>, and 3<sup>rd</sup> John tell you exactly what the church is to be doing today, right before the tribulation starts: walking in the light as He is in the light, having fellowship one with another (1John 1:7).

The job of the church today, which it is not doing, is walking in the light, as He is in the light, having fellowship one with another; and everything else will take care of itself. In John's epistles, you will find the kind of relationship the Lord Jesus Christ wants to have with you. He talks about spiritual growth in chapter 1 of 1John. He tells you how to maintain a relationship with Him, and when your relationship breaks down, he tells you how to clean yourself up and get back in fellowship with Him. That is what God wants you to do today. God doesn't want you to be the greatest evangelist who ever hit the world. God doesn't want you to

## Chapter 7 - New Testament Survey

be a missionary, or a preacher, or anything until you learn how to have fellowship with Him.

John tells you how to do that: walk in the light as He is in the light. Of course, the light is defined for you in **Psalm 119:105**:

***Thy word is a lamp unto my feet, and a light unto my path.***

The best way to walk in the light is to “let your fingers do the walking” as you fellowship with God through the precious pages of His book.

### **Jude & Revelation**

The remaining books in the Testament deal with the tribulation period and the end times. Jude is a prelude to the book of Revelation, and it deals almost exclusively with the second coming of Christ and the tribulation period. The book of Revelation, of course is the account of the end times and on into eternity.

So what is laid out in these seven divisions is a natural thing, it is not something I made up. God placed those books in that order for a reason. There are the three books you must watch out for: Matthew, Acts, and Hebrews. You know where to get church doctrine, and where to get personal instructions.

All scripture is given by inspiration of God and is profitable for doctrine FIRST. If you have your doctrine straight, then your theology will be straight. If your doctrine is not straight, the Bible won't make sense.

Now that we are completely through the New Testament, perhaps you can see an overview of how the Bible is put together. I have taken these last three chapters to give you this material for that purpose.

By now you should see how the book of Matthew bridges the Old Testament into the New Testament, how the book of Acts bridges the Jew to the Gentile, and how the book of Hebrews bridges the church ages back to the Jews in the tribulation. Now you should see how those three transitional books break up the New Testament and divide it into three categories to give you the basic structure of the New Testament. By now you should see how the theme of the whole Bible is a throne and two kingdoms: the spiritual kingdom of God, and the literal kingdom of heaven. Both kingdoms were here in Adam. The kingdom of God went out when Adam sinned and the kingdom of heaven stayed on earth. The kingdom of heaven went out in 606 BC and there were no kingdoms present until Jesus Christ showed up. Jesus brought both kingdoms with Him, and offered the kingdom of



## Chapter 7 - New Testament Survey

heaven to the nation of Israel, but they rejected Him. When the Jews rejected Stephen and the kingdom of heaven for the last time, it went out and was postponed for two thousand years, but the kingdom of God went on. One of these days the rapture of the church will take place, and the kingdom of God will go out, leaving no kingdom on this earth again, just as it was from 606 BC until Christ's first coming. The tribulation period will take place and God will reinstate the nation of Israel to its rightful place as the head of the nations, according to Deuteronomy 28:13, and then Jesus Christ will come back with both kingdoms belonging to Him, according to Revelation 11:15, and from there it will go on into eternity.

That gives you the entire Bible structure in as brief an outline as I can possibly give it.

Now I understand completely there is no way you will get all of this in one reading; it took me at least five years to understand it well enough to teach it. Please take this material and work on it, and put it together in your own mind. If all you got out of these three chapters is the difference between the kingdom of God and the kingdom of heaven, you have learned more about the Bible than you would learn in three years in the average seminary in America.

Now that I have given you this overview of the Bible, we will devote the remainder of this book to looking at more principles of Bible study to help you further. With the foundation we have laid to this point, we can now really get into some great things. The rest of this book will cover in detail some specific areas of Bible study which have been a great help to me over the years, and I trust they will do the same for you.

The material covered in the last three chapters is capsulized at the end of this book. Appendix B is diagram of the kingdom of God and the kingdom of heaven as they can be traced through the Bible. Appendix C contains the structure of the Old Testament, and Appendix D contains the structure of the New Testament.

## Chapter 7 - New Testament Survey

# Chapter 8

## Which Version?

*The words of the Lord are pure words: as silver tried in a furnace of earth, purified seven times.*

*Thou shalt keep them, O Lord, thou shalt preserve them from this generation for ever.*

**Psalm 12:6,7**

If this book had been written one hundred years ago, there would have been no need for this chapter. The King James Bible was the only English version available from 1611 to 1881, but since then, there have been scores of “updated” versions of the Bible published. Therefore, I must take time out to detail the history of these versions to determine which one really is the word of God.

In this discussion, we are entering the most controversial and emotional subject in Christianity today. Let me say at the outset - I really don't care what you believe or read. That is your choice; America is still a free country. You have the perfect right to choose any version you wish, and believe anything you want. I will NEVER interfere with anyone's right to do so. In exchange, I appreciate the same courtesy.

I believe the King James Bible is the word of God. That includes the 1611 edition, and any subsequent editions from that line, but does NOT include the so-called “New” King James Bible. I believe and teach all other English versions contain errors and, as a result, are subtle attempts by the Devil to cover up the truth. Please do not misunderstand me, I did **NOT** say you cannot find some truth in the new versions. I did **NOT** say you couldn't get saved by reading one. I did **NOT** say preachers who use other versions cannot be used of God. Please do not

## Chapter 8 - Which Version?

misquote or misunderstand me.

What I am interested in is **TRUTH**. I am not interested in a “reliable translation.” I am not interested in something 95% true, or 99% true, or 99.44% true, I want **TRUTH** - 100%, infallible, and absolute. I believe that absolute infallible truth is the King James Bible. As Jesus Christ said, “**Thy word is truth.**” (John 17:17).

Let me clarify something else. I do not believe, nor have I ever taught, that the King James Bible is inspired. I am misquoted that way constantly. I believe it is the word of God preserved (not inspired) in the English language.

However, there is really very little difference between inspiration and preservation. God inspired the original authors (Moses, David, Paul, etc.) to write what He wanted them to write from nothing. God then preserved His word through other men throughout history; but it is still the same God guiding the pen of man to record exactly the words God wanted to have recorded. The only difference is, one was recorded from nothing (inspiration), while the other was recorded through preservation of existing documents, either by copying them over in the same language, or translating into another language.

I am not a “scholar”. I have never professed to be a “master of theology”. I simply believe the word of God. One of the reasons God has seen fit to allow my ministry to grow as it has is because I don't hold anything over my people's heads as far as intelligence goes. I am just as big an egghead as most of them. We just believe what God said and, by the grace of God, try to live up to it.

Now if you are a young Christian, you need to understand something. In the religious world, they pass out Doctorates to each other like popcorn at the movies. There are so many “Doctors” in the body of Christ you would think God was sick. (Of course, He probably is sick of Christianity today, according to Revelation 3:16.) Most of them aren't earned Doctorates, they are honorary based on the individual's standing in the “fellowship” or the amount of his donations to the school. This is not a nice thing to say, I realize that; but truth hurts sometimes. The world is hung up on “being someone”. It is the same in Christianity. Wherever you go in Christian circles today, people are more concerned with your credentials than with your attitude of heart in your service for God. That is why churches in America today are consumed with questions like “How many did you have in Sunday School today?” All they are concerned with is numbers so they can impress each other with how important they are. Their attitude is: “Who cares about the spiritual condition of my members as long as they show up?” Who cares if my sheep are having problems as long as they give money? Instead of feeding

the sheep, all most pastors want to do is count them so they can sleep well and fleece them so they can live well.

I take the position in my ministry that any one of my members can have the same access to God and His word I have. I believe that, and I teach it to my people.

The Bible was not written just for pastors, it was written for all of God's people. My major purpose in writing this book is to give any Christian who wants it, a basis for understanding the word of God, believing it, and applying it to their life so they can grow in grace and in the knowledge of the Lord Jesus Christ. It is available to anyone who sincerely wants it and will just believe God for it.

Let's look to the Bible itself now, and substantiate what I have proposed. Let's see what the Bible says about the name of God:

***...Stand up and bless the Lord your God for ever and ever: and blessed be thy glorious name, which is exalted above all blessing and praise.***

**Nehemiah 9:5**

***Wherefore God also hath highly exalted him, and given him a name which is above every name:***

***That at the name of Jesus every knee should bow, of things in heaven, and things in earth, and things under the earth;***

***And that every tongue should confess that Jesus Christ is Lord, to the glory of God the Father.***

**Philippians 2:9-11**

***Neither is there salvation in any other: for there is none other name under heaven given among men, whereby we must be saved.***

**Acts 4:12**

These verses clearly give an exalted position to the name of God, and of Jesus Christ. But look at what the Bible says about itself in **Psalm 138:2**:

***I will worship toward thy holy temple, and praise thy name for thy lovingkindness and for thy truth: for thou hast magnified the word above all thy name.***

No matter how high the name of God is exalted, and it is, the word of God has been exalted ABOVE it.

Most educators and preachers want you to believe the word of God is only found in the "original" manuscripts written centuries ago by Moses, David, Isaiah, Paul, etc. Very few of them believe the common ordinary man in America can actually

## Chapter 8 - Which Version?

read the exact, infallible words of God in his native language. That is the question we will answer in this chapter. Has God preserved His word or not? I am not a scholar, I am merely an ordinary sinner just like you. Can I, poor little ordinary Mr. Average American, get a copy of the word of God in my hands that I can read in my own language? That is the question.

The proof text most commonly used by educators to “prove” the original manuscripts are the only word of God in existence is **2Timothy 3:14-17**. Let's look at the passage:

***But continue thou in the things which thou hast learned and hast been assured of, knowing of whom thou hast learned them;  
And that from a child thou hast known the holy scriptures, which are able to make thee wise unto salvation through faith which is in Christ Jesus.  
All scripture is given by inspiration of God, and is profitable for doctrine, for reproof, for correction, for instruction in righteousness:  
That the man of God may be perfect, throughly furnished unto all good works.***

If I had a dollar for every time someone has quoted that passage to prove the original manuscripts were inspired, I would be rich. College professors try to say the passage refers to the original manuscripts. Let me show you the fallacy of that teaching. Verse 16 says:

***All scripture is given by inspiration of God....***

Now look at verse 15. Paul said to Timothy:

***From a child thou hast known the holy scriptures....***

If that is true, then Timothy had the holy scriptures! But there isn't a person in this world who believes Timothy had the original manuscripts. Does anyone in their right mind believe Timothy had the ORIGINAL copies of all 39 books in the Old Testament? You would have to be insane to believe that. The book of Job is the oldest book in the Bible. It was written about 1850 BC. How did Timothy end up with it? Paul said Timothy knew the scriptures, did Paul lie? No, Paul did not lie. Timothy had the scriptures, but he did not have the “originals”. He had a copy of the word of God in his own language which had been preserved by God throughout the centuries.

That's not all...look at verse 17:

***That the man of God may be perfect, throughly furnished unto all good works.***

That verse says it is impossible to be furnished unto all good works unless you have the scriptures. If you don't have the scriptures, then God is unjust to ask you to do anything for Him because if He can't get you the scriptures, He has failed on His end of the bargain by not equipping you properly. What a staggering thought! You **MUST** have the words of God or God is unjust! Of course, God is perfectly just, He is the perfect standard of justice, and He has preserved His word for you, and made it available if you want it.

As we get into the study of where the Bible comes from, we won't waste five minutes with the "original manuscripts" because no one has them. Instead, I will show you where your authority lies, and why the King James Bible is the right one in English and how every other "version" on the market today is a counterfeit of the real one.

I don't know how you feel about it, and it doesn't matter to me, but I believe the Bible is the final authority in all matters of faith and practice. I am not referring to some mystical papers no one has, I am talking about the book I have in my hands that I can read in my own language, and have been reading for the last fifteen years. I believe the King James Bible is the word of God from cover to cover without one error and is **EXACTLY** what God wants me to have in 20th Century America. Since I believe this, I take everything in my life from that book. As such, the foundation for everything in the universe is found in that book, and we can establish the authority of the Bible from the Bible itself.

I don't know why this is, but in churches across America today, you can hear messages on almost every type of activity of the Devil imaginable, except one. If you went to the average fundamental church in America and attended every preaching service for a year, you could probably hear dozens of messages on drinking, drugs, sex, movies, profanity, cigarettes, and all the ungodly things of this world. At some of the better churches, the preacher may even talk about how the Devil uses false religions to mess people up; but you will almost never hear a message on the Devil and how he twists the Bible. You will almost never hear a message on the work of Satan against God in church history. You will almost never hear anyone preach about the Devil and false Bibles.

Come on, folks! Do you think the Devil wasn't active in church history? Do you

## Chapter 8 - Which Version?

think the Devil just forgot about the word of God? If you know anything at all about the Devil, you know he is the greatest counterfeiter in history. He counterfeits EVERYTHING God does. Did he forget about counterfeiting the Bible? How could he ignore something so important? The trouble is, most of God's people are deceived into thinking anything remotely associated with "Christianity" or the Bible (any "Bible") is of God. A greater mistake could never be made. Genesis 3 contains the first mention of the Devil in the word of God. (Remember the "Law of First Mention"?) Observe what he says:

***Now the serpent was more subtil than any beast of the field which the Lord God had made. And he said unto the woman, Yea, hath God said, Ye shall not eat of every tree of the garden?***

**Genesis 3:1**

The first words out of the Devil's mouth are, "Yea, hath God said..." I find that very interesting. The first time he appeared, he said, "Yea, hath God said," and then changed what God said. Look at what God said to Adam and Eve in **Genesis 2:16-17**:

***And the Lord God commanded the man, saying, Of every tree of the garden thou mayest freely eat:  
But of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, thou shalt not eat of it: for in the day that thou eatest thereof thou shalt surely die.***

God said they could eat of the trees of the garden FREELY except one. The Devil misquoted, questioned, and twisted what God said. The Devil has been in the business of "revising" and "updating" the word of God ever since.

In Genesis 3:1, he questioned the word of God, and in verse 4, he denied the word of God. He said, "Ye shall not surely die" when God said, "Ye shall surely die." In verse 5 he added his own private interpretation to the word of God when he said, "For God doth know..." This is why I have said time and time again, the primary attack of the Devil is to use the word of God as a base and then twist it for his own purposes.

This is the problem you will face as you study where the Bible came from. There are only two Bibles in this world: God's Bible and the Devil's Bible. The college professor tells you all Bibles are the same and all are reliable translations of the same Greek and Hebrew manuscripts. When he says that, he is at best deceived, and at worst LYING to you.



## Chapter 8 - Which Version?

There are two lines of Bibles, and these two lines can be traced through history. One is the pure line through the body of Christ, and the other is the false line of the Devil, which he fostered to disrupt and confuse the body of Christ. The major purpose of this chapter is to trace these two lines through history for you.

Before we actually begin, I need to define a few terms so we can be sure to be talking the same language. (Unfortunately, no matter how hard you try, you can't always escape the MSU.) If you ever read anything on this subject, there are a few terms you must be familiar with. I will try to keep this as simple as possible.

**PAPYRUS** - This is cheap paper, like newsprint, and very perishable. The New Testament writings were made, copied, and passed around on this paper.

**VELLUM** - These were tanned leathers on which some writings were made in early church times. They were very expensive, and were usually made into scrolls so they could be rolled up and stored.

**KOINE** (koy-nay) **GREEK** - This was the common “street” language of New Testament times.

**CLASSICAL GREEK** - This was the educated class language of New Testament times. A good analogy of the difference between the two basic forms of New Testament Greek would be a Harvard Ph.D. (classical Greek) talking with a west Texas ranch hand or a ghetto teenager (Koine Greek).

**TEXTS** - Complete New Testaments in Greek. These were prepared by men or groups of men who spent great portions of their lives compiling various manuscripts. Some of the common texts used are Nestle's Greek Text, Wescott and Hort Greek Text, and the Received Text or Textus Receptus.

**MANUSCRIPTS** - These are copies of just portions of the Bible, perhaps only a book or chapter. They are used to compile texts.

**VERSIONS** - A translation of a particular text into another language. The King James Bible is a version (in English) from a particular Greek Text. The New American Standard is a version from a different text.

As you study this subject, you encounter what is referred to as “Families of Manuscripts”. Educators teach there are many so-called families, but there are really only two.

## Chapter 8 - Which Version?

The first “family” of manuscripts is the Syrian family. This is also called the Byzantine text, or the Received text.

The other is the Egyptian family. In Bible colleges, they invent a big word for these called Hesychian type texts so they can charge a lot of money to learn the material. These are also called the Alexandrian texts because they actually come from Alexandria, Egypt.

So let's just refer to these as the Syrian and Egyptian texts. These are the areas of the world they come from. Any Bible in this world, I don't care which one, comes from one of these two sets of manuscripts. Now, the trails of these two lines can get pretty deep, but I will try to keep it as simple as I can. For the sake of time and simplicity there is some information I won't cover. There are much better authors than myself on this subject. All I want to do is give you a basic understanding on which you can build. The study of this subject can take years to fully comprehend. What you need to do is take this information and build upon it with the other materials available. It is the same with all the topics covered in this book. I have not intended to completely exhaust any subject, but to give you the basics to start you on the road to understanding the word of God for yourself so you can have victory in the Christian life. This is only a beginning.

Church history obviously begins with the book of Acts. Therefore, this has to be where we begin our study of where the Bible comes from. In **Acts 11:26** it says:

***And when he had found him, he brought him unto Antioch. And it came to pass, that a whole year they assembled themselves with the church, and taught much people. And the disciples were called Christians first in Antioch.***

That is a very important statement. The Bible says they were first called Christians in Antioch. That is Paul's home church. Antioch is in Syria. Not only that, the first mention of Bible teachers in the New Testament is in **Acts 13:1**.

***Now there were in the church that was at Antioch certain prophets and teachers: as Barnabas, and Simeon that was called Niger, and Lucius of Cyrene, and Manaen, which had been brought up with Herod the tetrarch, and Saul.***

Also, the first missionary trip in the New Testament went forth from Antioch of Syria in Acts 13.

## Chapter 8 - Which Version?

When I read the Bible, I pick up things like this and realize there must be something special about Antioch. I would think God had a special place in his heart for a city where men followed Him so loyally they were called “Christians” or “Little Christs”. (That is what the word “Christians” means.) I would think God would bless a group of people who thought enough of the word of God to teach it to their converts. I would think God would love a church who took literally the commandment of the Lord Jesus Christ to go into all the world and preach the gospel, and did their best to fulfill it. I would keep my eye on Antioch. After all, if the Bible is the final authority, and I keep seeing all these good things about Antioch, I would want to pattern my life and ministry after theirs.

When Paul and the others wrote the New Testament between 40 and 95 AD, they wrote in Koine Greek, because it was the universal common language of New Testament times. There have only been three universal languages since the time God created all the different languages at the tower of Babel: Hebrew, in Old Testament times; Greek, in New Testament times; and English today. In every country with an educational system today, there are two languages taught from grade school through college: their own language, and English, but of course, the Bible told you that if you were studying. Not only does it tell you about a one world government and language in the end times, it specifies that language as English. Revelation 13 says the Antichrist has a mouth like a lion. Any student of prophecy will immediately recognize the lion as England, but that is an entirely different study which would take another book this size to cover. As you continue to study and grow on your own, perhaps you will get this later.

Not only was the New Testament written in Koine Greek, it was written on papyrus. The reason the “originals” don't exist is because papyrus was very perishable paper, and the writings were passed around, and copied over, and read and used. They were hid under people's beds and in their closets as the government searched for them. They were passed from person to person at the expense of persecution for what they had and believed. Many of the documents were seized and destroyed because they were “dangerous to the mental welfare of humanity”. Since they were on papyrus, they wore out very quickly, and had to be copied over many times.

When Paul took his missionary trips, he launched out from Antioch of Syria. He went all through Asia Minor and Europe preaching the word of God, winning people to Jesus Christ, and starting local churches. That is where the churches of Revelation 2 and 3, along with the other New Testament churches, got their start historically. The book of Ephesians was written by Paul to the church he started at

## Chapter 8 - Which Version?

Ephesus, which is mentioned all through the book of Acts. Thyatira is mentioned in Acts 16, and is one of the local churches John addressed in Revelation. Another of the churches in Revelation 3, Laodicea, is mentioned in the book of Colossians. Paul started churches in dozens of places, and he wrote several books of the Bible to some of the local churches he established, such as Romans, Corinthians, Thessalonians, etc. Paul was in jail for preaching the word of God in Philippi in Acts 16, and later started a church there and wrote the book of Philippians. You can see this for yourself by looking at the maps in the back of your Bible. The true line starts in Antioch of Syria and spreads through Paul into Asia Minor and Europe.

The churches Paul started had nothing but an Old Testament written in Hebrew. As he made his journeys and wrote his letters, these letters began to be circulated all through the area. They were written on the common papyrus paper of the day in the Koine street language of the common man, and they were circulated, read, used, copied over, distributed, handled, and marked on with notes, just like they should have been. That is the purpose of the word of God - for people to read and use, so they can be “perfect, thoroughly furnished unto all good works.” The word of God is not a “holy relic” to be put in a museum and worshipped. God knows human nature, and He knew if the “original” manuscripts of the Bible were still around, that is exactly what would happen.

So the word of God spread from Antioch into Asia Minor and Europe. Later this area of the world produced a constant line of Bible believing, Bible teaching, saved ordinary people. They were groups of people like the Albigenes, Waldenses, Huguenots, Hussites, etc. One of these groups, the Moravians, were some of the earliest missionaries as we know missionaries today.

It was a Moravian who led John Wesley to the Lord. Wesley was a minister from England who was unsaved. He had traveled to America for a “revival” and flopped because he did not have the Holy Spirit of God. Wesley heard about all the great things George Whitfield had done in America, and wanted a piece of the action, but he was unsaved. When he was returning home on the boat, he was down in the dumps because of his great failures. Then a Moravian got hold of him and began to witness to him. As a result of that experience, John Wesley got saved.

There were other groups, such as the Pietists and the Anabaptists, and any reliable church history book will cover these groups by the dozens. These groups took the Greek New Testaments they had and translated them into their own languages

## Chapter 8 - Which Version?

(such as Latin, and German, and Syriac), and those Bibles spread all through Europe.

The thing that makes the King James Bible the word of God is the line of manuscripts it came from. King James had nothing to do with it. There were “King James Bibles” around before King James’ grandmother was born. King James did not translate the English Bible, he was simply the man on the throne who allowed it to be done.

People complain all the time about how rotten a person King James was. So what? God can use all kinds of people. Did God use Moses? Of course He did. Moses killed a man. Did God use David? Of course, but I wouldn't trust David with my wife, would you? I might end up like Uriah the Hittite. God can use all kinds of people; He even used Balaam's ass. Which reminds me, would God use you?

At this point, we need to go back in history to the book of Acts and come through again to trace the Devil's line of Bibles. At the same time all the things from Antioch were going on, something else was happening: the word of God also went down into Egypt. In Acts 8, an Ethiopian eunuch got saved, and the Bible says he “went on his way REJOICING”. He took his salvation back home. Most church historians report Barnabas and John Mark took off on a missionary trip to Africa after their split with Paul. So the word of God got down there, too. Let's see what happens from there.

The second trail of Bibles begins in a place called Alexandria, Egypt. In this city was a peculiar man who ran a school. His name was **Philo**. Philo was a renegade Jew. Here is what he believed:

- 1) He totally rejected the Old Testament as an accurate revelation from God. He used it in his school, but changed it anywhere it did not line up with his own beliefs. (Wasn't it the Devil in Genesis 3 who first changed the word of God?)
- 2) He was totally sold out to the ideas of Plato, Socrates, and Aristotle, the three Greek “wise men” who originated the humanism and atheism running rampant in the world today. Philo took the teachings of these men and incorporated them into the Old Testament to come up with what he liked.
- 3) Philo did not believe Adam and Eve were real people; he believed the first 11 chapters of Genesis were a myth.

In the encyclopedias, Philo is called the master of the great university at Alexandria. His name, Philo, is very familiar to anyone who has studied PHILOsophy. He is the father of all the philosophies which plague this world

## Chapter 8 - Which Version?

today. Those philosophies were nothing more than the ancient Greek teachings of atheism, humanism, evolution, hedonism, and all the other manmade garbage which Solomon brought to naught in the book of Ecclesiastes centuries before Philo was born.

When Philo left the scene, a man showed up named **Pantaenus** about 150 AD. He ran this notable university until about 190 AD. The main emphasis of this university was teaching the Bible, or at least what they thought the Bible said, mixed with their own ideas and taught in the light of their own beliefs. Pantaenus was a deep gnostic who claimed to have “perfect insight” into Christianity. The fact that he did not believe in God, however, wasn't considered in all of this.

During this period of time, the Greek New Testament writings from Antioch got down here, and were incorporated into the teachings at the university. These educators got their hands on the New Testament, and just like Philo with the Old Testament, they began with the teachings of Plato, Socrates, and Aristotle, and the Greek gods of mythology, and added their own beliefs to end up with their own version of the New Testament.

The next individual in charge of this school was **Clement of Alexandria**. He lived from about 150-215 AD. He was a star worshipper. He taught that God gave the Greeks their philosophy. That was a common thread with all these people, they all believed the Greeks were the chosen people of God when the Bible says the Jews are. Clement taught that a man gets to heaven by overcoming sensuality. He also believed another way to get to heaven was to get baptized.

All these men were just the “founding fathers” of this university. The one who really got things rolling was a man named **Origen**. He was a master. He lived from 184-254 AD. If you pick up almost any book on church history, you will find Origen given a place of pre-eminence just like Paul, Martin Luther, John Calvin, George Whitfield, or Billy Sunday.

Origen was unquestionably the greatest heretic who ever lived. There are a multitude of books on his life, but let me summarize a few things about him. Here is what Origen believed:

- 1) He believed water baptism was necessary for salvation.
- 2) He did not believe the Old Testament was true.
- 3) He did not believe the account of the beginnings in Genesis was literal.
- 4) He did not believe in the literal resurrection of Jesus Christ.
- 5) He taught the restoration of the Devil. In other words, he believed God and

the Devil would eventually patch up their differences and live happily ever after.

- 6) He did not believe the Lord Jesus Christ would come again.
- 7) He believed in a transitional afterlife whereby men gain eternal life, somewhat similar to the Catholic belief in “Purgatory”.
- 8) He believed the writings of Plato, Socrates and Aristotle were inspired of God.
- 9) The main theme of teaching in his school was that **Jesus Christ was not God.**

This is not something I picked up out of a crackerjack box; this is exactly what he believed. As I said, Origen was the greatest heretic who ever lived. The sad part of this is his elevation to a place of almost “sainthood” by the average church historian. I am not making this up as I go; this information is well documented; and if you want, I can provide you with a list of books as long as your arm to verify it. If you are interested, write me for the information.

Now let's watch this line come through the Bible. The first mention of Alexandria, Egypt, in the Bible is in Acts 6:9. Here a group of people, including some “Alexandrians” rise up and dispute with Stephen. You know what happened to Stephen; he was invited to a “rock concert” for preaching the word of God. The Alexandrians in this passage turned out to be bitter enemies of the word of God.

The next mention of anyone from Alexandria is in Acts 18. A man named **Apollos** was from there, and if you read the account, you find he was messed up on false doctrine. In Acts 18:26, Priscilla and Aquilla had to straighten him out on his preaching. Then Paul got hold of some of Apollos' converts in Acts 19:1-6 and had to straighten them out also.

You would think people would notice things like that after awhile. The Bible is always the definitive on everything.

The only other mention of Alexandria in the Bible is in Acts 27:6 and Acts 28:11. Both passages deal with merchant ships sailing from Alexandria straight into Italy. This was a common trade route of the day, but there is much more significance than just this. As we continue, I will show you the definite connection between Alexandria and Rome in the New Testament.

This garbage from Alexandria started to spread, but it did not spread into the areas Paul went into in Asia Minor and Europe; it went straight to Rome, and here is how it got there.

## Chapter 8 - Which Version?

About 300 AD, after Origen went off the scene, there appeared a man named Eusebius. He was the “Bishop” of Caesarea. He had a friend named Constantine. Constantine was a good Roman boy who was in charge of the Eastern half of the “Holy” Roman Empire.

Constantine was an unusual character. One time during a battle, he looked up and saw a big cross in the sky. He points to his conversion here; by his own testimony he was “saved” at this point of his life. He claims he heard a voice from heaven saying, “In this sign, conquer.” (I believe the real explanation was too much beer and pepperoni pizza the night before.) So Constantine “adopted Christianity and was baptized”. (That is the standard account of his “conversion” in most church history books. There are lot of people in hell today who have done that much.) Constantine then began making “converts” to his particular form of Christianity. He had all his soldiers paint those crosses on their shields and then march on the people. When he captured a bunch of people in a battle, he would put a sword to their throats and say, “If you don't get baptized, we will kill you.” Of course, he got a lot of “converts” that way, and is given credit for “bringing Christianity to the heathen nations”; but all Constantine was interested in was his political standing.

As this was happening, Constantine was in Byzantium and Eusebius was in Alexandria, and the whole world was run by the Roman Empire. Eusebius got a call from his buddy Constantine on the phone, and Constantine said, “I'm a Christian now, Eusebius, and I need a copy of the scriptures. I heard you guys have a nice school down there and you have a pretty good Bible with a lot of good stuff in it. I need you to make me fifty copies of the Bible so I can show everyone how great a Christian I am. Here's a purchase order, #666. Make sure you put them on the best stuff you can find; spare no expense, I am the king and my credit is good.”

Eusebius said, “I have just the thing for you, king. Our talented staff of scholars have just put together the latest thing off the presses. This Bible is the most accurate translation available, and the truest to the original meanings of the verbally inspired original autographs. It is the best translation of the scriptures yet; and we have put it in the classical king's Greek, so as to “update” it for the very best tastes such as yours.”

So Eusebius filled the order from the writings of his mentor, Origen. Eusebius worshipped the ground Origen walked on. In one of his books, Eusebius described Origen's descent as he came down the pinnacle steps of the school, and



at the end of the statement, he said, “He was like a god.” Eusebius sent copies of Origin’s “Bible” to Constantine, and from there, they went into Rome: fifty copies written on vellum scrolls, the best money could buy, just as Constantine ordered. In fact, the letter Constantine sent to Eusebius is still preserved in a museum somewhere, and it clearly shows an order for fifty copies on vellum scrolls.

These manuscripts went into Rome, and spread into Europe from Rome, NOT from Antioch. About this time, the Roman Catholic Church got its foundation through the merging of Constantine and “Christianity”.

Then a man named **Augustine** showed up. Augustine is the man who really laid the foundation for the Roman Catholic Church around 400 AD. He took the Greek manuscripts from Alexandria and built his doctrines for the Roman Catholic Church on these manuscripts. Eventually they were translated into Latin and were the base text for **Jerome's Latin Vulgate**. That was the official Bible of the Roman Catholic Church. Jerome was the man who translated this Bible, Latin was the language he translated it into, and Vulgate means “vulgar” or the common language of the day. This Bible was in the everyday Latin of that time.

Constantine got “converts” by threatening to kill people unless they got baptized. When Augustine showed up, the official hierarchy at Rome went one better. They said, “You either accept our doctrines and our Bible, or we will kill you.” So the texts from Antioch were suppressed through persecution, and the Catholic Egyptian texts began to multiply.

About this time, roughly 500 AD, the Dark Ages began. You're told all kinds of junk about this period of time in school, but the Dark Ages came in for one reason. The Roman Catholic Church got started as the corrupt Greek manuscripts from Egypt were spread into Rome. Rome came into power, and controlled the world through her political and religious domination. Rome said, “Every one will believe like this and accept our manuscripts as the Bible, under penalty of death.” The Bible says,

***Thy word is a lamp unto my feet, and a light unto my path.***

**Psalm 119:105**

Jesus Christ is the incarnate Word, and the Bible says He is the TRUE LIGHT (John 1:9). Jesus said He was the LIGHT of the world (John 8:12). The Dark Ages came about because the lights went out! Anytime you suppress the Lord Jesus Christ and the word of God, you have darkness. Ask any missionary who has labored in DARK Africa, they will tell you.

## Chapter 8 - Which Version?

Augustine, Pope Leo, and Pope Gregory came on the scene and said, “If you don't believe like we do, you are a heretic. We set up the church state, this is the way it is, and if you don't like it, we will just kill you.”

So the Roman Catholic Church marched through history, and what took place for one thousand years was the Dark Ages where true Christianity was persecuted unmercifully to unbelievable proportions. Read Foxe's Book of Martyrs for accounts of some of the things that happened during this time. Foxe's Book of Martyrs is one of the greatest books ever written, and is an absolute MUST for a child of God to read.

Why did God let that happen? Why would God allow the Roman Catholic Church to bring in the Dark Ages? Why would God permit them to murder so many of His children simply for what they believed?

Well, you will never wipe out Christianity. The persecution makes it stronger. The problem; however, is that when you read church history, you don't hear about this. All you hear about are the phonies, because the Roman Catholic Church controlled the educational, religious, historical, and literary world for one thousand years and suppressed the truth. So you have to dig to find the truth about church history today.

God's people died for their belief in the word of God from Antioch. Anyone who was caught with a copy of any portion of the Syrian manuscripts in their possession was put to death on the spot. There were no less than four million Albigenes and Waldenses butchered during this period. Of course, the average Christian today has absolutely no concept of what took place during this time as these two lines of Bibles made their way through Europe.

Now, if you are a Roman Catholic, I am not saying these things to offend you. I am saying them because they are the truth. Before you get offended and throw this book in the fireplace, read Foxe's Book of Martyrs and a dozen other works like it, and then reconsider. Don't be close-minded about it. Don't be prejudiced...read the material, study to show yourself approved unto God, and search for the truth with an open heart! God will reveal the truth to you if you do this!

We have now developed both lines from the time of the Apostles, up into Europe, through the Dark Ages, and are now around 1500 AD. Let's carry on from there.

There were a few early “reformers” such as **John Huss** and **Wycliffe** preceding this date, who translated the Syrian manuscripts into the common language of the day, and they paid for it with their blood. They laid the groundwork for what

would take place beginning with the greatest of the reformers, **Martin Luther**.

Martin Luther kicked the door open and the Dark Ages were over. God's word brought the light back in. You can't destroy Christianity by persecution, that only makes it stronger. So when Martin Luther began the reformation, there were one thousand years of pent-up zeal for Christianity ready to burst forth. The word of God is what ended the Dark Ages.

Martin Luther's greatest "crime" according to the Roman Church was teaching and preaching the Bible in his own native tongue, German. He only had minor doctrinal differences with the Church at the beginning, and up until his death still maintained many of their beliefs and practices, such as infant baptism. As time went on, and his battle with the established church hierarchy grew stronger, more of their doctrinal differences came out, but the main problem was his insistence that the common man could have and read the word of God in his own language. The Devil didn't like that. Doctrinal arguments are never really a problem for the Devil; he can argue doctrine longer than the greatest "theologians" who ever lived. He just does not want the common man to plug into the living words of the living God. The only real threat to the Devil in the universe is that book.

What we are studying here goes way beyond just the people involved. We are not studying the movements in history of a bunch of people with Bibles, we are studying the movement of the Holy Spirit of God taking the Gospel to the ends of the earth, and the Devil counterfeiting that plan and trying to destroy God's plan. Church history is nothing more than the study of the movement of God being countered by the movements of the Devil.

Luther was brought up in the system - he was a Roman Catholic Priest! But when he translated a Bible in his own language, he knew the difference between the two sets of manuscripts. He didn't waste his time with Egypt, he went to Antioch for the word of God.

Now, if I just taught you what the Baptists believe, you could dispute it, but you can't argue with history. You cannot argue the fact that Martin Luther translated his Bible from the Syrian manuscripts from Antioch. If Martin Luther knew the difference, and refused to take the Alexandrian manuscripts, why would any church today go back to those old corrupt manuscripts? Every main line denomination in the world today will accept an NASV, an NIV, a "New" King James, an RSV, or any other Bible from the Alexandrian line and consider it just as authoritative as the King James Authorized Version. The reason for this is that every one of those denominations are headed back into the Roman Catholic

## Chapter 8 - Which Version?

system. The Ecumenical movement exists for one reason: to get all these religions back together under one leader at Rome so when the Antichrist steps on the scene, he can take over. That is where we are headed.

As I have stated, there are two lines of Bibles. One line started in Antioch of Syria and spread through Paul's ministry into Europe. It was preserved through the common ordinary saved people who loved God, and loved His word, such as the Albigenses, Waldenses, Huguenots, Pietists, Anabaptists, and dozens of groups like them. The Alexandrian manuscripts went from Egypt to Rome, and spread through Europe from the Roman Catholic state religion. This Church State conquered the known world at that time and forced people to believe as they did under penalty of death. Those are the two lines of Bibles. Every Bible on earth comes from one of those two families of manuscripts.

Martin Luther began an epidemic when he translated the Bible into his native tongue. People from all parts of Europe jumped in and did the same, but the primary work was done in English. There were seven translations made around this time from the Syrian manuscripts into English leading up to the King James Bible. If you know anything about Bible numerics, you know that seven is God's perfect number. (I wonder why there were seven English translations during this time? Probably just a coincidence.) Those seven translations were:

(1) Wycliffe's English Translation	1382
(2) Tyndale's Bible	1525
(3) Coverdale's Bible	1535
(4) Matthew Henry's Bible	1537
(5) Coverdale's Great Bible	1539
(6) Geneva Bible	1560
(7) King James Authorized Version	1611

The **King James Authorized Version** published in 1611 is the seventh in that line. It is the last English translation from the Syrian manuscripts.

Remember the scripture passage introducing this chapter? Notice what it says:

*The words of the Lord are pure words: as silver tried in a furnace of earth, purified seven times.*

*Thou shalt keep them, O Lord, thou shalt preserve them from this generation for ever.*

**Psalm 12:6-7**

It says, “The words of the Lord are pure words.” The Bible says in Proverbs 30:5, **“Every word of God is pure.”** Proverbs 8:8 says, ***All the words of my mouth are in righteousness; there is nothing froward or perverse in them.***

There is not one word in the Bible that is incorrect. Every single word is exactly what God intended to say.

Psalm 12:6 says the words of the Lord are “as silver tried in a furnace of earth.” The preservation of the words of God into book form was done amidst incredible persecution. God did not choose to preserve His word through executive committees in three-piece suits sitting in air conditioned offices drinking Pepsi. That is man's way. God's way was through a “furnace of earth.” He preserved His word through men and women who were roasted alive for what they believed. God used men and women who were beaten and hung upside down in rivers and drowned. He used men and women who were forced to watch their children being eaten alive by savage animals because they believed the word of God. He used men and women who were tortured and mutilated in unbelievable manners, and were willing to pay the price with their own blood to have a copy of the word of God they could read. The words of the Lord were preserved in a furnace of earth.

Psalm 12:6 says the words of the Lord were “purified seven times”. When the seventh one rolled off the press, it was purified exactly as God wanted it.

Then He made a promise in Psalm 12:7 to keep and preserve the words of the Lord from this generation for ever. The promise was **NOT** to inspire them, but to **PRESERVE** them, and they are preserved in English in the Authorized King James Version.

Of course, the Devil did not forget about this. In 1582, the English “**Douay-Rheims**” Bible was published from the Alexandrian manuscripts, and was the “official” English version of the Roman Catholic Church. Many times educators try to convince people that the poor, stupid, archaic King James translators did not have access to the complete variety of manuscripts available today through recent “scientific and archaeological discoveries.” Baloney! They had access to every document used to produce the Roman Catholic Douay-Rheims in 1582; which was published twenty-nine years before they published their work. They just knew the difference between the two sets of manuscripts, and didn't use the Alexandrian family because they understood where it came from.

So the King James Bible was published in 1611 in England. Of course, if you

## Chapter 8 - Which Version?

know anything at all about history, you know that from about 1600 to 1900 England was the greatest nation on the face of the earth. The reason for that was the King James Bible. It had nothing to do with their navy, or their economic system, or their government. God blessed and honored them because they honored God's word. During this period of time, England colonized the world, and took the King James Bible to the ends of the earth under British Imperialism.

An interesting historical phenomenon took place around this time. There were two major sea-faring nations: England and Spain. Spain was the hotbed of Roman Catholicism while Englanders were preaching the word of God, getting people saved, and putting a copy of the scriptures into the hands of the ordinary man in his own language. King Henry had broken with the Roman Catholic Church and formed the Church of England. Although the Church of England was certainly not a New Testament church in the mold of Antioch, it was the first step away from Rome, and the seed of the great movement of the Holy Spirit of God in later years.

Rome didn't like that, and Spain took their orders from Rome. They figured they had to do something about this, so the Spanish Armada set sail for Britain to wipe them out. At this time, Britain did not have a navy, and the Spanish Armada was almost invincible. But just as they sailed into the English Channel and prepared for battle, God sunk them. England didn't need a navy, they had a book written by a God powerful enough to wipe out any navy. Israel's battles in the Old Testament were the same. Most of the time they were totally out-manned, but they had God. That's all you need!

Anytime you try to separate God from history, you have a major problem. You won't be able to find any truth. History is nothing more than **HIS**-story. It is a story of the movements of God being countered by the movements of the Devil. God had His hand on the nation of England for a reason; He had a purpose in mind for them because of their faithfulness to Him and His word.

The King James Bible was translated from English into over 600 languages before 1880. This period of time produced the greatest preachers and missionary movements in history. It was during this time that William Carey and four of his friends held their famous "hay stack meeting" which was the birth of missions as we know it today. William Carey was the father of modern missions. This period of time produced men like John and Charles Wesley, Jonathan Edwards, George Whitfield, and Charles Haddon Spurgeon. These men and others in their time took the word of God to the ends of the earth.

I need to clarify another point on which I am often misquoted and misunderstood. I do NOT believe the King James Bible is the only word of God in existence.

Whenever I teach this subject, invariably some educated idiot will ask, “What about people who don't speak English?” I usually counter with, “What about people who don't speak Koine Greek and Hebrew? Koine Greek has not been spoken by anyone for fifteen hundred years!”

*Answer a fool according to his folly, lest he be wise in his own conceit.*

**Proverbs 26:5**

To ask a question like that proves a person's total ignorance of what we have been talking about. The reason God used the English language to preserve His word over the last few centuries was not because of its “beautiful poetic style and classic, flowing illustrations”. It was because a group of people who just happened to speak English were faithful to His commandment to carry the message to the ends of the earth. God speaks in any language.

As I mentioned, the word of God from the RIGHT manuscripts was taken to the ends of the earth under British Imperialism, and translated from English into hundreds of languages by the missionaries who went out from England and America. What those nations and languages have done with the word of God from there, is their own business. In some areas, it has been totally rejected, and can hardly, if ever, be found. In other areas, it has been kept faithfully enough that copies are still in abundant circulation. If the Lord tarries His coming and America continues its increasing rejection of the King James Bible, the lights will go out here, too. The only reason God has blessed this country is because of that book.

Now if I went to a foreign country as a formal “missionary”, I would not use the English King James Bible, I would use the Bible in their native tongue which came from the Syrian manuscripts. In Germany, it would be Martin Luther’s Bible. That is the word of God in German. In Spanish areas, I would use the Valera, which is the Spanish version from the Antioch text. Practically every major language in the world has one. They were translated from the English King James during the great missionary movements of England and the United States from 1600 to 1900.

During this period of time, the Roman Catholic Church was almost put out of business. God's people were so faithful to his word, the Catholic Church couldn't get away with anything. The Devil realized he could not destroy Christianity through persecution, so he decided to go underground and work through infiltration, deception, counterfeit, and ridicule.

## Chapter 8 - Which Version?

Perhaps the most tragic events of modern history occurred in 1881 and 1901. In 1881, the British Foreign Missionary Society commissioned an “updated” English translation to replace the King James called the **Revised Version**. From 1881 to 1884 a group of “talented, recognized scholars” took the King James Version and inserted hundreds of readings from the Alexandrian family of manuscripts to produce this “Bible”. It was an attempt by the Devil to destroy the faith of God's people in the word of God by counterfeiting it. By publishing a “Bible” with completely different readings, the average man began to question exactly what God really did say.

From 1901 to 1904, a group of “scholars” in America produced the **American Standard Version** and accomplished the same thing in this country. From there it was a snowball effect. The **Revised Standard Version** was published in 1952, the **New American Standard** in 1963, the **Jerusalem Bible** in 1966, the **Living Bible Paraphrase** in 1971, the **New International Version** in 1978, and the “**New**” **King James** in 1982....just to name a few. Each one has claimed to be the best “translation” of the “original autographs” (which no one has). What each one has done is insert the Alexandrian readings into hundreds of passages, thereby destroying the word of God. If you have one of these versions at home, look at the introduction or preface. It will discuss how the King James version was fine for its day, but, due to “recent scientific and archaeological findings” we have discovered better manuscripts, truer to the “original autographs”. Those “older and better manuscripts” are the corrupt Alexandrian manuscripts I talked about earlier in this chapter. Look at the margin notes in the new versions. You will find literally hundreds of notes like: “Some ancient authorities say...” and “Older manuscripts read...” Those are the corrupt Alexandrian manuscripts being inserted into the word of God to cast doubt upon what God really did say.

Now please don't get mad at me. Like I said, my search is for TRUTH, regardless of who says what. The new “Bibles” only contain partial truths. It is the half truths which are so dangerous. A bold-faced, out-and-out lie rarely fools anyone, but the partial truths do. Let me give you a spiritual principle which will help you the rest of your life if you will remember it:

**The more truth the Devil can wrap around a lie, the better effect that lie will have in a person's life.**



## Chapter 8 - Which Version?

Many conservative fundamental Christians complain about “Bibles” such as the Jehovah's Witness New World Translation and condemn it for being so openly and abundantly false. That version isn't nearly as dangerous as a “New” King James which has only a few lies in it. Allow me to illustrate this great spiritual truth from the word of God.

In Joshua 9, one of the most tragic mistakes the children of Israel ever made was making a league or covenant with the Gibeonites after they entered the promised land. Because of their failure to drive out ALL the inhabitants of the land, they got messed up in false religion and worshipped Baal and Ashtaroth and all the false gods of those heathen nations. They failed to fulfill God's purpose for their nation because of this, and eventually were carried into captivity and destroyed as a nation because of this terrible sin. The basic seeds of this sin were sown in the book of Joshua. Watch how the Devil tricked them into this.

In Joshua 9, the Gibeonites approached Joshua and the elders of the nation of Israel when they “heard what Joshua had done unto Jericho and Ai.” They were afraid of being wiped out and wanted to save their necks. In Joshua 9:4-5 they cooked up a scheme to trick Israel into saving them alive by deception. If you will read Joshua 9:9-13, it details the account of what the Gibeonites said to Joshua to fool him. Here is what they said:

- 1) “...From a very far country thy servants are come...”  
FALSE (Gibeon was less than 20 miles away)
- 2) “...because of the name of the Lord thy God...”  
TRUE (They were afraid of God's power)
- 3) “...for we have heard the fame of him...”  
TRUE
- 4) “...and all that he did in Egypt...”  
TRUE
- 5) “...and all that he did to the two kings of the Amorites...”  
TRUE
- 6) “...that were beyond Jordan...”  
TRUE
- 7) “...to Sihon....and to Og....which was at Ashtaroth....”  
TRUE

## Chapter 8 - Which Version?

- 8) “...wherefore our elders and all the inhabitants of our country spake to us....”  
TRUE
- 9) “....saying, Take victuals with you for the journey....”  
TRUE
- 10) “....and go to meet them....”  
TRUE
- 11) “....and say unto them, We are your servants....”  
TRUE
- 12) “....This our bread we took hot....”  
TRUE
- 13) “....for our provision....”  
TRUE
- 14) “....out of our houses....”  
TRUE
- 15) “....on the day we came forth to go unto you....”  
FALSE (They let it set out to get moldy)
- 16) “....but now, behold, It is dry....”  
TRUE
- 17) “....and these bottles of wine which we filled....”  
TRUE
- 18) “....were new....”  
TRUE (At one time they were)
- 19) “....and, behold, they be rent....”  
TRUE
- 20) “....and these our garments and our shoes are become old....”  
TRUE
- 21) “....by reason of the very long journey.”  
FALSE

The Gibeonites deceived Joshua and the elders of the nation of Israel with a short little speech consisting of twenty-one statements, eighteen of which were TRUE.

## Chapter 8 - Which Version?

But the whole thing was a lie! The closer to the truth, the better the lie works.

How were these people able to fool Joshua? Verse 14 says he “asked not counsel at the mouth of the Lord.” If you want to discern truth from lies, **ask God!** James 1:5 says, “If any of you lack wisdom, let him ask of God...” I trust you will follow this command, and ask God for wisdom in this matter.

Now, please, don't go out and burn all the new versions you can find just to prove you are spiritual. Don't point your finger at the next person you see reading one and preach to him and condemn him as being “demon possessed.” My only purpose in this chapter was to show YOU the difference in Bible versions so YOU could be edified and challenged to believe the word of God. If someone asks you about this subject, tell them. If you have the opportunity to stand for the authority of the word of God, do it. Do not; however, be so totally consumed with this emotional and controversial subject that you lose sight of the reason God has seen fit to show YOU the differences - so YOU can have the word of God in your own language; so YOU can be “perfect, throughly furnished unto all good works.” Once you settle this subject in your own mind and believe the word of God, then go on to read it, study it, apply its principles to your life and practice its truths in everything you do in this life. Only by doing this will it profit YOU.

## Chapter 8 - Which Version?

# Chapter 9

## Learning by Association

*For the invisible things of him from the creation of the world are clearly seen, being understood by the things that are made, even his eternal power and Godhead; so that they are without excuse.*

**Romans 1:20**

One of the primary ways God reveals the truth of His word is by association. In other words, by relating things that are similar. One thing you will realize as you study the Bible and grow in the Lord is that everything in this universe is a manifestation of God. Now I don't know if you can comprehend that or not. I know it's pretty deep, but let me illustrate further so you can understand better what I am saying.

God is a trinity; God is body, soul, and spirit. Man is a three part being also, made in body, soul, and spirit, patterned after God. Everything else in the universe breaks down into a system of threes. There are three groups of people addressed in the Bible, as I detailed in the rules of Bible study (Rule #2). The Old Testament is divided into three sections: the law, the prophets, and the wisdom books. The New Testament is divided into three sections: the gospels, the acts, and the epistles. On this earth there are three kingdoms: animal, vegetable, and mineral. The earth itself is made up of three things: land, sea, and air. Space is divided into three parts: height, depth, and width. Matter consists of three basic elements: protons, neutrons, and electrons. Time is divided into three parts: past, present, and future. Every man on this earth comes from three men: Shem (Mongoloid), Ham (Negroid), and Japheth (Caucasian). In school, they give you a problem:  $2 + 2 = 4$ . Anyone knows it's not complete until it gets the third part. Everything in this universe can be broken down into three parts, because everything in this

## Chapter 9 - Learning by Association

universe is a manifestation of God. Now if this is true, and it is, then God has set up this system called the universe where everything takes place EXACTLY the way God intends. Now look at **Romans 1:20**, and watch every word very carefully:

***For the invisible things of him [God] from the creation of the world are clearly seen...***

What?!?!?! That doesn't make sense! How can you see something invisible? Someone says, "I don't understand. How can one person be three people, yet only one? How can I understand heaven? I can't see it. What is hell like? I don't understand."

The Bible says:

***For the invisible things of him [the things you can't see] from the creation of the world are clearly seen, being understood [how?] by the things that are made, even his eternal power and Godhead; so that they are without excuse.***

That verse is dynamite, ready to explode in your face if you will light the fuse by REALLY believing it. What God is saying in that verse in essence is this: the "heathen", the man everyone thinks doesn't have a clear presentation of the gospel in Africa, or Indonesia, or somewhere in the far dark corners of the earth, has NO EXCUSE; he can get the truth if he wants it. People ask, "What about the poor heathen in Africa?" The Bible says they have as clear a presentation as the "heathen" in America, because they have the witness of "the things that are made".

Let me give you an example. The Bible says the invisible things of him from the creation of the world are clearly seen...so let's use the sun as an example, and see if we can understand how God is like the sun. **John 1:9**, speaking of Jesus Christ, says:

***That was the true Light, which lighteth every man that cometh into the world.***

The sun is light for this earth, and Jesus Christ is the light of this earth. Jesus said Himself in **John 8:12**:

***Then spake Jesus again unto them, saying, I am the light of the world: he that followeth me shall not walk in darkness, but shall have the light of life.***

Someone asks, "What is God like?" God is like the sun. "Well, HOW is he like the sun?" Did you ever study the sun? It puts out three types of rays: x-rays, light rays, and heat rays.

The first type are x-rays. X-rays are invisible; you can't see them, and you can't feel them. This is a perfect picture of God the Father.

***God is a Spirit: and they that worship him must worship him in spirit and in truth.*** **John 4:24**

God the Father cannot be seen or felt; He is worshiped in spirit and truth.

The second type are light rays. X-rays can't be seen, but you can see light rays. When Phillip asked Jesus Christ to show him the Father, the Lord said:

***...he that hath seen me hath seen the Father...*** **John 14:9**

Light rays are a picture of Jesus Christ, God the Son. They are the VISIBLE part of the sun. The Lord Jesus Christ is the visible manifestation of the invisible God.

The third type of rays which come from the sun are heat rays. You can't see heat rays, but you can feel them. The Bible says in **John 14:17** that the Holy Spirit is:

***...the Spirit of truth; whom the world cannot receive, BECAUSE IT SEETH HIM NOT, neither knoweth him: but ye know him; for he dwelleth with you, and shall be IN you.***

This verse says the Holy Spirit cannot be seen, but he can be felt. Thus the heat rays are a perfect picture of the Holy Spirit of God.

If you want to understand something you can't see, study something God made in the creation. The sun is a perfect picture of God as a trinity. It is made up of three parts, yet it is only one sun.

Let's pursue the illustration further. It is an established fact that the earth rotates AGAINST the sun. It is a perfect parallel because the Bible says this world is AGAINST the Lord Jesus Christ.

***The world cannot hate you; but me it hateth, because I testify of it, that the works thereof are evil.*** **John 7:7**

If you don't believe this world hates the Lord Jesus Christ, just bring up His name in public sometime, reverently (not as a cuss word), and watch the reaction.

People say, "God made the sun, the moon, and the stars, and put all that stuff up

## Chapter 9 - Learning by Association

there just to give us something nice to look at.”

No, He didn't! He put it there to show you spiritual truths about the things you couldn't see by the things He made. So the sun is a picture of God as a trinity. To see this one more time, look at what the Bible says in **Malachi 4:2**:

***But unto you that fear my name shall the Sun of righteousness arise with healing in his wings; and ye shall go forth, and grow up as calves of the stall.***

That verse is a reference to the second coming of the Lord Jesus Christ. Look at how it is spelled: S-U-N. Someone says, “That's a mistranslation.” Are you sure YOU aren't a mistranslation?

The sun is a picture of God. It puts out three types of rays: x-rays, light rays, and heat rays...picturing perfectly God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit.

Remember, I said EVERYTHING in this universe is a manifestation of God, and is designed to show you great spiritual truths about Him and the way He operates. So let's don't stop with the sun, let's look at the moon and see what it pictures. If you go out on a clear night and look at the full moon up there, it shines so bright. People have written love songs, and sung them to their girl friends, like “Shine on, shine on harvest moon...”, but the moon DOESN'T shine. **Job 25:5** says:

***Behold even to the moon, and it shineth NOT..***

Where does the moon get its light? It reflects the light from the sun. If you are saved, you get your light from the “Sun of Righteousness“, the Lord Jesus Christ. Therefore, the moon is a picture of a Christian.

In Genesis 1, the Bible says God made two great lights: the greater light to rule the day, and the lesser light to rule the night. Also, the dispensation we live in now, the church age, is called in the Bible “the night”. Therefore, we are the light in the night time shining for the Lord Jesus Christ. We have no light of our own, we reflect the light of the Sun, the Lord Jesus Christ.

That's not all. The illustration can go on indefinitely, so let's take it a step further, and I will give you a little science lesson. Most people think science and the Bible are opposites, that they are not compatible. Actually, the Bible is centuries AHEAD of science, and science will never catch up. Job knew the moon didn't shine about 1800 BC. Science didn't figure it out until over three thousand years



later. A little slow, aren't they? That is just one example of literally hundreds of "scientific" facts which are actually Bible truths scientists stumbled across. It took medical "science" until the 1700's to realize that "bloodletting" (draining one's blood) was NOT a cure for anything. In fact, it was bloodletting which was the cause of death! Moses, in 1500 BC, said, "The life of the flesh is in the blood" (Leviticus 17:11).

Now "science" is all right if it is used properly and if it is understood in the proper context. However, you should never forget one great spiritual truth:

**Science, given enough time, will eventually have to CATCH UP with the word of God in order to discover any truth.**

Let's get back to our illustration of the sun and moon. We know the earth is in an orbit around the sun, the moon is in an orbit around the earth, and every once in awhile the earth passes between the sun and the moon. When that happens, the astronomers get out their telescopes and say, "Oh! A great scientific phenomenon is taking place called a lunar eclipse!" Unfortunately, scientists don't understand what is REALLY happening. God is giving us a picture of a Christian out of fellowship with Him. When the world comes between the Lord Jesus Christ and a Christian, the light of his testimony goes out. God says if you can't understand the things that are invisible, study the things He made.

A "solar eclipse" is when the moon comes between the sun and the earth, and blocks the rays of the sun. What does this picture? It shows what happens when the Christian tries to operate in the flesh instead of simply reflecting the light of the Lord Jesus Christ. When the Christian allows himself (his flesh) to get in the way, the Lord cannot shine through him to this lost and dying world. Of course, the scientists know nothing about this, either.

Occasionally, the sun and the moon will appear in the sky at the same time. The scientists and astronomers go through a detailed explanation based on light refraction and all the physical laws of the universe, but they have no understanding of what is really taking place. The very fact that physical laws exist proves there is a law maker! The reason God (the law maker) caused the sun and moon to appear at the same time was to show you a picture of the Millennium. When the sun (the Lord Jesus Christ) returns at his second coming, the moon (the Christians) will return with Him, and BOTH will rule and give light to this earth at the same time.

## Chapter 9 - Learning by Association

I have always been an amateur astronomer. I had a telescope at one time which could magnify about nine hundred powers. It was a whopper. I could see craters on the moon down to about one thousand yards in diameter with it. I would watch rockets explode on the moon, and look for the dust bombs they would shoot up. I made a real study of the Apennines mountain range on the moon for about two years where a rocket ship supposedly went down with Russians alive on it. (I was watching for their signals, but they never gave me any.)

Of course, as I looked at the moon with the naked eye, it looked so bright and shiny and beautiful. Then I would look at it with the telescope at about four hundred power, and all I could see were holes, rocks, and scars, and just a big ugly mess. It had pot marks like a nineteen year old kid with acne. I would look at the moon like that and think, "Is that the same place? Am I looking at a street light, or is that really the moon?"

That is a perfect picture of many Christians. If you look back in your life, there are some deep scars from the battles you've gone through. If you were to give me your testimony, you could show me some of those scars the world left on you; but when people look at you now, they don't see any scars because the glory of God's love and God's life shines through your life. That truth is pictured by the moon.

**God says the invisible things you cannot understand can be understood by studying what God made.**

If that's true, and it is, it means astronomers and scientists are wasting their time. It means Charlie Darwin really was a monkey because he didn't understand what the Bible said. It means this whole educational system, which teaches the universe was blown into existence by some piece-meal combination of accidental chances, is **NOT** true, and God's book **IS** true.

At one time I taught this at Kent State University in Ohio. I was invited to debate with them a couple of times a year, and I would always give my argument for the Bible. One time I went into one of the classes and told the professor and the students the Bible is the word of God. I told them exactly what I have been telling you: how and why God created the Universe the way He did; but, of course, they all believed in evolution. So I went in prepared. I brought one of those things on a pedestal with a model of the sun, and sticks with little planets showing their respective positions. (I don't know what they are called, but it looks like a little

porcupine with a round head.) In my demonstration, I was marveling at how all the planets were in line, showing them all the different positions.

Then the college professor said, "We would like to have one of those for our class. Did you make that or buy it?"

I said, "Oh, I didn't do either. I was in the corner of my house one day, and noticed some dust there I hadn't cleaned up for years, and years, and years. So I let the dog in, and got some cat hair with it, and this and that...then it rained later on, and the window was open, and the dust and cat hair started to smolder and smoke. I went to bed that night, and when I woke up the next morning, it was laying over there in the corner."

The professor said, "How absurd!"

Then I said, "It's no more absurd than what you have been trying to tell me for the last two and one-half hours about how we got here. Let me ask you a question, Doctor. You're educated; if you won't believe this little thing I have in my hand was formed by dust in the corner of my house, what makes you think these kids here will believe this whole universe came into existence the same way?"

That class was as quiet as a turkey farm the day after Thanksgiving. I was never asked back again. Mark it down: when education and science go contrary to the word of God, you can kick them out the door. Because of what you have just read, you now know everything God made in this universe is a picture of some great spiritual truth. Trees also picture something in the Bible they are likened to people.

***Blessed is the man that walketh not in the counsel of the ungodly, nor standeth in the way of sinners, nor sitteth in the seat of the scornful.***

***But his delight is in the law of the Lord; and in his law doth he meditate day and night.***

***AND HE SHALL BE LIKE A TREE planted by the rivers of water, that bringeth forth his fruit in his season; his leaf also shall not wither; and whatsoever he doeth shall prosper.***

**Psalm 1:1-3**

How are trees likened to people in the Bible? In tracing a person's ancestry, the term used is: "tracing the family TREE."

If a man has an arm or leg amputated, it is referred to as "losing a LIMB." Even

## Chapter 9 - Learning by Association

unsaved people use that type of terminology without understanding at all that it comes from the Bible. If a man dies unexpectedly in the prime of his life, someone will refer to him as being “CUT DOWN before his time.” To see this in the Bible again, let's look at Judges 9. In this story, Abimelech has just conspired to take the kingdom by killing seventy of his brothers. However, he missed the youngest, Jotham. Now pick up the story in Judges 9:7.

***And when they told it to Jotham, he went and stood in the top of mount Gerizim, and lifted up his voice, and cried, and said unto them, Hearken unto me, ye men of Shechem, that God may hearken unto you.***

***The TREES went forth on a time to anoint a king over them; and they said unto the olive TREE, Reign thou over us.***

***But the olive TREE said unto them, Should I leave my fatness, wherewith by me they honour God and man, and go to be promoted over the TREES?***

***And the TREES said to the fig TREE, Come thou, and reign over us.***

***But the fig TREE said unto them, Should I forsake my sweetness, and my good fruit, and go to be promoted over the TREES?***

***Then said the TREES unto the vine, Come thou, and reign over us.***

***And the vine said unto them, Should I leave my wine, which cheereth God and man, and go to be promoted over the trees?***

***Then said all the TREES unto the bramble, Come thou, and reign over us.***

***And the bramble said unto the TREES, If in truth ye anoint me king over you, then come and put your trust in my shadow: and if not, let fire come out of the bramble, and devour the cedars of Lebanon.***

**Judges 9:7-15**

Notice clearly in this passage how trees are likened to people - in this case, kings. The strangest type of “tree” in the Bible is the Christian. He is unlike any other tree in existence because he grows on a Rock, the Lord Jesus Christ, and he cannot grow in the earth. If a Christian gets his roots in the world and tries to live like the world and get his nourishment from the world, he will die spiritually. No wonder unsaved people look at Christians like they are so strange...they are! That is why the Bible says Christians are IN the world, but not OF the world. Trees are made up of cells, and they have a family. They die every year and resurrect in the spring, just like people all die and will someday resurrect: some unto life, and some unto damnation (John 5:29). Have you ever studied rain in the Bible? Someone says, “It rains because of the evaporation and condensation cycle, and because the rain in Spain falls mainly on the plain and is generally a pain.”

No, God has a reason for rain. He says, "The things you can't see can be understood by studying the things I made until you understand them." God has a purpose in everything He does.

Rain in the Bible is likened unto a couple of things, but the predominant example is the judgment of God, so let's look at that picture. Of course, the classic rainstorm in the Bible is the flood in Genesis 6 through 8. Everyone knows the story: Noah built a boat and God sent the flood to wipe out the world. **Genesis 6:5-7** gives God's motivation for the flood:

***And God saw that the wickedness of man was great in the earth, and that every imagination of the thoughts of his heart was only evil continually. And it repented the Lord that he had made man on the earth, and it grieved him at his heart.***

***And the Lord said, I will destroy man whom I have created from the face of the earth; both man, and beast, and the creeping thing, and the fowls of the air; for it repenteth me that I have made them.***

God was fed up. His only resort was to judge the world and condemn it, so He judged the world by drowning it out with rain. When God poured out his judgment on Sodom and Gomorrah, the Bible says:

***Then the Lord RAINED upon Sodom and upon Gomorrah brimstone and fire from the Lord out of heaven.*** **Genesis 19:24**

Rain is a picture of God's judgment. Of course, once that judgment is over, and the "rain" stops, something takes place. In the physical creation, after a rainstorm, the grass turns green, the flowers bloom, the air is fresh and clean, and everything smells great. There is nothing quite like the wonderful smell after a nice spring shower. Everyone is familiar with this. Likewise, after God's judgment fell in Noah's day, the earth was clean, sin was gone (temporarily), and everything was perfect.

That is a picture of future events also. When the judgment of God falls in the tribulation, the earth will be cleansed of sin. When the rain (judgment) is stayed and the Lord Jesus Christ returns to establish His kingdom, the desert will bloom like a rose, the earth will bring forth her fruit, and the world will be a perfect place in which to live.

## Chapter 9 - Learning by Association

When you look at everything in that light, the Bible becomes quite a different book, doesn't it? The Bible is not some Mickey Mouse comic book with pictures and stories in it; it is God's eternal word, and out of everything He said and did, God pulled out the exact words, at the exact times, and the exact places, and put them in a book and gave it to you. Why? Because it is important. That is why you need to take that book off the shelf and open it and study it.

Allow me to close this chapter by reinforcing the truth of Romans 1:20 with two other passages of scripture.

*The heavens declare the glory of God; and the firmament sheweth his handywork.*

*Day unto day uttereth speech, and night unto night sheweth knowledge.*

*There is no speech nor language, where their voice is not heard.*

*Their line is gone out through all the earth, and their words to the end of the world. In them hath he set a tabernacle for the sun,*

*Which is as a bridegroom coming out of his chamber, and rejoiceth as a strong man to run a race.*

*His going forth is from the end of the heaven, and his circuit unto the ends of it: and there is nothing hid from the heat thereof.*

**Psalm 19:1-6**

*But ask now the beasts, and they shall teach thee; and the fowls of the air, and they shall tell thee:*

*Or speak to the earth, and it shall teach thee: and the fishes of the sea shall declare unto thee.*

*Who knoweth not in all these that the hand of the Lord hath wrought this?*

**Job 12:7-9**

If you want to understand God and how He operates, study His physical creation:

***“The HEAVENS declare the glory of God.”*** **Psalm 19:1**

***“The FIRMAMENT sheweth his handywork.”*** **Psalm 19:1**

***“DAY unto DAY uttereth speech.”*** **Psalm 19:2**

***“NIGHT unto NIGHT sheweth knowledge.”*** **Psalm 19:2**

***“Ask now the BEASTS, and they shall teach thee.”*** **Job 12:7**

***“The FOWLS of the air...shall tell thee.”*** **Job 12:7**

***“Speak to the EARTH, and it shall teach thee.”*** **Job 12:8**

***“The FISHES of the sea shall declare unto thee.”*** **Job 12:8**

***WHO KNOWETH NOT IN ALL THESE THAT THE HAND OF THE LORD HATH WROUGHT THIS?***

**Job 12:9**

I suppose the ones who don't know this are the educators, scientists, and evolutionists who don't want to believe the word of God. If 2Timothy 2:15 is a million dollar verse, and it is, then Romans 1:20 is a BILLION dollar verse. Its truth will earn you more riches than a billion dollars ever could if you will only apply it to your life.

## Chapter 9 - Learning by Association



# Chapter 10

## The Two Most Important Words in the Bible

*I have also spoken by the prophets, and I have multiplied visions, and used similitudes, by the ministry of the prophets.*

Hosea 12:10

This chapter is a continuation of the previous one, where I established how God teaches by association. In Hosea 12:10, God says He has “used SIMILITUDES” in order to reveal truth. With that in mind, let me introduce you to the two most important words in the Bible:

### AS and LIKE

I told you from the very outset the Bible is really a very simple book. God did not center His word around a six syllable Harvard vocabulary; He made it available to any idiot in this world who will just believe what he reads.

There is no greater study you can make through the word of God than the study of the words AS and LIKE. They are two of the simplest words in the English language, yet the two most profound words in the Bible. Those two words will unlock more spiritual truth than anything else you will ever encounter.

In chapter 2, I showed how the Holy Spirit of God will lead and guide you into all truth by taking the word of God and imparting it into your heart based on your attitude toward the Bible. He will use many ways to teach you, but the primary way is by **association, contrast, and repetition.**

## Chapter 10 - The Two Most Important Words in the Bible

The most common form of revelation in the Bible is when God says, “This thing is like this, and not like that”, and then repeats it over and over until you get the point. One reason some parts of the Bible seem so boring is because God has to repeat Himself hundreds of times because we are too dumb and lazy to get it the first time. That is human nature. How many times do you think the average child is told to clean up his room before he is eighteen years old? Don't get put out with God when He repeats things. Simply realize He is doing that for the same reason you repeat yourself hundreds of times to your children. Let's take a closer look at the words **AS** and **LIKE** in a few situations where they are used in the Bible, and see how God teaches by similitudes. We will start with Matthew 24, beginning in verse 32:

*Now learn a parable of the fig tree; When his branch is yet tender, and putteth forth leaves, you know that summer is nigh:*

*So LIKEwise ye, when ye shall see all these things, know that it is near, even at the doors.*

*Verily I say unto you, This generation shall not pass, till all these things be fulfilled.*

*Heaven and earth shall pass away, but my words shall not pass away.*

*But of that day and hour knoweth no man, no, not the angels of heaven, but my Father only.*

**Matthew 24:32-36**

The context of this passage deals with the second coming of the Lord Jesus Christ. It likens Israel to a fig tree which is budding and coming back to life, and it says these events will take place before the second coming.

Someone says, “I want to understand the tribulation period. I want to learn about the second coming of Christ. How do I study it?”

It's simple: look for those two little words **AS** and **LIKE**. Look for God to show you something by associating it with something else in the Bible.

If you want to study the second coming of the Lord Jesus Christ and the events dealing with the rapture of the church and the tribulation period, then read the next verse:

*But AS the days of Noe were, so shall also the coming of the Son of man be.*

**Matthew 24:37**

Now, 99.99% of Christians read that verse, keep on traveling, and never really

## Chapter 10 - The Two Most Important Words in the Bible

study it because they do not understand the importance of the words **AS** and **LIKE**. Matthew 24 is the greatest chapter in the four gospels on the second coming of the Lord Jesus Christ, which is the theme of the Bible, and right in the middle of the passage, Jesus says, "...AS the days of Noe were, so shall also the coming of the Son of man be."

The Bible tells you, if you want to study the second coming, to go back and study the times of Noah, because there is a parallel and an association between the two. God will do that time and time again in the Bible.

So, let's go back to Noah's time and see what we can learn about the second coming. The story of Noah is found in the book of Genesis, starting in Chapter 5. In Genesis 5:21-27, a man shows up by the name of Methuselah. He was the oldest man in the Bible, and his name, "Methuselah" means, "When he is gone, judgment shall come." If you will take out a pen and paper and figure the time span detailed in Genesis 5 and 6, you will see that in the exact year Methuselah dies, the flood comes. In case you didn't know it, the flood was God's judgment on this earth.

In Genesis 5:22-24 you find a very revealing story which is a perfect picture of what takes place BEFORE God's judgment falls on the earth. In Genesis 5 there was man named Enoch. The Bible says,

***Enoch walked with God: and he was not; for God took him.***

**Genesis 5:24**

Now I realize it's not written like this, but here's how I imagine the story took place.

Old Enoch was be-bopping down the road one day when God walked up to him and said, "Enoch, how are things going today?"

Enoch said, "Fine, Lord, everything is going great."

"Pretty wild place around here, isn't it?"

"Yes, Lord, it sure is bad. It's just a mess."

"You know, Enoch, we've had some great times together over the last three hundred years, haven't we?"

"Yes sir, Lord, it sure has been great. I really have enjoyed it."

Do you ever talk to God that way? Why is it most people pray in some pious,

## Chapter 10 - The Two Most Important Words in the Bible

sophisticated language they never use in everyday life? They say, “Oh, God...the majestic creator of the universe...thou who makest all things...God of the birds, God of the flowers, God of the trees....” Hey, just talk to him like your friend - Enoch did.

You ask, “How do you know he did?”

You can't walk with God for three hundred years without developing a friendship! Enoch had the same relationship with God you can have. But most people think God is unapproachable, that they must fold their hands and stiffen their backs and use flowery words to impress Him. The Bible says over and over again He is your friend if you are saved. The Bible says Moses talked with God face to face just like a man talking to his friend. Jesus said He laid down His life for His friends. When I talk to my friends, I don't say, “Oh, thou Reverend Bob of the most high mountain....” No! I say, “Hey Bob, how are you doing? I love you, buddy.”

I am not being “irreverent” or “blasphemous”, but when I talk to God, I talk to Him as a friend. I say, “Lord, I love you. Lord, I sure do appreciate this day you have given me; it sure is nice. Thanks, Lord, for getting all these cars out of my way so I can get home.”

That had to be the way Enoch talked with God. Think about it! You will live at the most about eighty years, and since most people never get serious with God until about age twenty, the most you have is sixty years to walk with God and fellowship with God. Enoch walked with God for three hundred years - they were friends.

It is hard to conceive what it was like back in that wicked world, but I'm sure God met him by the road one morning and said, “Come on, Enoch, I'll walk to work with you this morning.”

Enoch says, “Boy, Lord, this sure is great.”

How would you like to walk to work with God in the morning? You do every day if you're saved, whether you realize it or not.

I heard a man preach one time who said, “How would you live your life today if you looked over in the passenger's seat and God was sitting next to you? If you looked over from your machinery at work and God was standing right there, I bet you would live your life differently.”

That makes good preaching, but I thought to myself, there's got to be more to it

## Chapter 10 - The Two Most Important Words in the Bible

than that. He lives inside me. He hears everything I hear, He sees everything I see, He knows everything I think! How much closer can you get? He's not in the seat next to me, He's in the driver's seat; He's inside my body. When I hit my finger with a hammer, I hit God's finger! The Bible says in 1 Corinthians 6 my body is the temple of the Holy Ghost; it is God's body.

The same is true for any child of God. If you are saved, you can have as close a relationship with God as you want. It is entirely up to you. God is right there all the time just waiting.

So one day, God met Enoch on the way to work and said, "Enoch, this place sure is wicked."

And Enoch said, "I know, Lord, this sure is a mess. I saw some of those Amorites at one of their wild parties the other night, and they stayed up all night carousing and having a wild time and carrying on like the Devil."

And God said, "Enoch, how would like to get out of here just for a little while?"

"Boy, it sure would be great! Do you have something in mind, Lord?"

"Yeah, why don't you come to heaven for a day with me?"

"You know, Lord, that is a good idea. I have some vacation time left. I'll come up and you can take me fishing in those golden streams where there is no pollution and we can catch a couple of ninety-foot trout. I would really enjoy that, Lord."

And God said, "Well, come up hither, Enoch."

So Enoch went to heaven for a day. But when he got there, he found out there is no night there, and has been there ever since!

Enoch is a picture of the church - he gets raptured out BEFORE the judgment. The Bible says in Hebrews 11 and in Genesis 5 Enoch was translated: he was taken up; he was raptured out. Then AFTER he was raptured, God's judgment fell and the whole world was drowned.

At the same time judgment fell, there was something left down here: Noah and the ark. As the water came down, the ark floated and all during God's judgment Noah and the ark were preserved. That is a perfect picture of the nation of Israel during the tribulation.

When God's judgment was stayed and the ark came to rest on Mt. Ararat, Noah

## Chapter 10 - The Two Most Important Words in the Bible

and his three sons had the whole world to themselves. It was all clean, all the wicked people had been wiped out, and there was no more sin. That is a picture of the New Heavens and the New Earth talked about in Revelation 21 and Isaiah 66.

If you want to study the second coming of the Lord Jesus Christ, study Noah's time, because **AS** it was in the days of Noah, so shall it be in the coming of the Son of man. The most important word in the entire passage is the one which appears to be so insignificant: **AS**.

Briefly, what you have is this: Enoch goes up - a picture of the church being raptured. After the rapture takes place, God's judgment falls in the tribulation period. During the tribulation period, the nation of Israel is preserved while the judgment of God falls on a wicked world. Then after the judgment period is over, the Jews inherit the earth which has been cleansed of all sin.

That straightens out the heresy about the church going through the tribulation. The reason the church does not go through the tribulation is because Enoch didn't go through God's judgment in his day. That truth is seen by understanding the association God gives you in **Matthew 24:37**:

***But as the days of Noe were, so shall also the coming of the Son of man be.***

The words **AS** and **LIKE** will open up a vast multitude of scripture if you pay attention to them.

Of course, the attitude in Noah's time was, "Who cares? God is the God of love! God wouldn't hurt anybody! What do you mean God is going to wipe us out with judgment?"

They refused to believe God's judgment was coming. The most tragic part of the whole story is the people in Noah's day had the strangest sign anyone ever had in the history of the world. They saw animals come from all parts of the earth, two by two. They saw a lion and a lamb go into the ark together without fighting. They saw animals which have never associated together getting in the same boat without any kind of problem, and as they watched that, they missed the greatest sign and the greatest wonder of the ages. Why? Because they absolutely **REFUSED** to believe God; they thought God wouldn't do it.

Now put yourself in Noah's place for a minute. You must admit he did have a problem. First of all, it had never rained before and he had to try to explain rain. Not only that, he had to tell people God was going to kill everybody with rain,

## Chapter 10 - The Two Most Important Words in the Bible

even all the little babies! Imagine the conversations!

Someone would ask, “What's rain?”

Noah would say, “Well, I don't know, but it's coming.”

“Oh, Noah, you're overdosing on religion. You've been spending too much time at that crazy Baptist church in the valley. What's the matter with you anyway?”

“Well, God said it was going to rain and I have to build a boat.”

“Oh, really? How big a boat do you want to build?”

“Oh, about nine hundred feet long.”

About that time, they would be calling the police to come and get him in one of those funny little white suits with the long sleeves.

Stop and think about his problem for a minute! Imagine him going to a lumber yard and asking for some lumber to build a boat. The lumber salesman says, “Fine, we can take care of you. Let me get an order blank. Now, what kind of lumber do you need?”

“Well, let's see, I've got Shem, Ham, and Japheth, our wives, and a few animals...oh, let's start with about ten thousand two-by-fours.

About that time the lumber salesman falls out of his chair. “How big a boat are you going to build?!?”

“Oh, about nine hundred feet long.”

“But Noah, there isn't even any water around here. Why build a boat that big?”

“So the animals can get on.”

“What animals?”

“Well, it's going to rain, see, and...”

Can you see his predicament? The next time you tell someone about the rapture of the church and they look at you like a tree full of owls, just remember Noah.

Now, about the time he had the ark about half built, the people devised a new Sunday afternoon activity called “Arkin”. They would all gather in the valley and sell hot dogs and peanuts and make fun of the old boy while he preached. That's

## Chapter 10 - The Two Most Important Words in the Bible

right - the Bible says in the book of 2Peter that he preached. He would have his boys build the boat while he got up on the keel and preached God's coming judgment.

Do you know what they did? They laughed at him. They said, "Now come on, Noah, we're religious - we believe in God. God is the God of love, He wouldn't hurt anybody."

You might ask, "How do you know they said that back then?" Because they say it now, and the Bible says, "AS it was in the days of Noe, so shall it be in the coming of the Son of man."

Now let's look at another passage in Luke 17. This will explain what we just saw in Matthew 24.

***And AS it was in the days of Noe, so shall it be also in the days of the Son of man.***

***They did eat, they drank, they married wives, they were given in marriage, until the day that Noe entered into the ark, and the flood came, and destroyed them all.*** **Luke 17:26-27**

This is a parallel passage to Matthew 24 telling us what it will be like immediately prior to the second coming.

Now look at the next verse and we'll see another similitude:

***LIKEwise also AS it was in the days of Lot; they did eat, they drank, they bought, they sold, they planted, they builded.*** **Luke 17:28**

Lot lived in Sodom and Gomorrah, home of the "gay rights" movement. People ask, "Why is homosexuality on such a rampage? Why is it becoming the accepted thing?" Because it was the accepted thing in Lot's time in Sodom, and the Bible says, "AS it was in the days of Lot, so shall it be in the coming of the Son of man."

Of course, you haven't seen anything yet. Someone may say, "We're becoming more free now. We're understanding the suppressed feelings these poor homosexuals have been hiding all these years and we are now more tolerant and understanding..."

Not so - we're heading toward the end, and the Lake of Fire. If God doesn't burn San Francisco (and dozens of places like it) to the ground, He will owe Sodom and Gomorrah an apology.



## Chapter 10 - The Two Most Important Words in the Bible

We are even to the point now where society has invented a system of fancy words and terminology to dress up the situation. There was a time in America when a drunk was called a drunkard, but not anymore. Now they are called “chronic alcoholics”. Downtown, we used to have bums. Not anymore, now they are referred to as “transients”. We have made it sound so nice you almost want to be one.

Nowadays, we have “gays”, or “homosexuals”, or an “alternate lifestyle”.

Why not call it what it is? **SIN**. Why not call them what they are? **QUEERS**. Why do we have to dress it up to make sin look respectable? It gets worse as time goes on, also. The latest term I heard used for queers was “gender identity disorder”. Imagine some psychiatrist earning \$100,000 per year to think up garbage like that! God have mercy on America!

Recently, a friend of mine was involved in a debate with the pastor of a so-called “church”. This “pastor” has a “church” where queers can “worship” together, and he even goes so far as to marry queers. They were debating on television, and this queer “pastor” had the audacity to say, “I think it is the most natural thing in the world for two people to love each other no matter what their sex is.”

And right there on TV, my friend said, “Hmm, that certainly is a queer statement.” I almost lost it.

People say, “You should be more tolerant!”

I'm more tolerant than God was; He burnt them to the ground with fire! Obviously, I wouldn't consider anything like that - all I do is preach against sin. Don't tell me about being tolerant when queers in America are campaigning for “civil rights” and are allowed in the public schools to teach your children about their godless perverted “lifestyles”.

The reason homosexuality is almost on a rampant scale is because we are coming into that time frame in the word of God, hastening to the days of the coming of the Lord Jesus Christ. People ask, “Why is the world becoming so wicked? Why is it nobody wants to hear about the gospel?” Because it's becoming just like it was in the days of Noah and in the days of Lot. There was a poll taken about fifteen years ago which said eighty-five percent of the preachers in America do not believe in a literal hell. That's eighty-five percent of the **PREACHERS**: imagine what the percentage is of the rest of the people. That's exactly what they believed in Noah's time, and also in Lot's time. People don't believe in God's judgment

## Chapter 10 - The Two Most Important Words in the Bible

anymore, instead they believe God is some big old granddaddy in the sky who takes everyone to heaven just because they are a good fellow.

That's not the God of the Bible. If you believe in a God like that, you have made a terrible mistake. You have sold out the word of God for a program and a system of terms. You had better get your nose back in the book; otherwise, you are headed for a tragic end where your theology will get straightened out by the Lake of Fire. I don't say that because I have anything against you, my friend, but because I have a genuine love for souls and I don't want to see anyone end up in Hell.

Now, let's look at one more passage where God associates two things through the use of the words **AS** and **LIKE** in the book of Hosea. Of course, the doctrinal context of Hosea is God dealing with the nation of Israel during the tribulation period because of their rejection of Him. Israel committed spiritual adultery in serving Baal, Ashtaroth, Molech and all the other false gods in the Old Testament, so God put them away during the church age to find a bride for His Son, the Lord Jesus Christ.

In Hosea 1:2, God commands Hosea to marry a harlot, then He uses that relationship and the children which come from it as an object lesson for the nation of Israel. Now pick up the story in chapter 2:

***Say ye unto your brethren, Ammi; and to your sisters, Ruhamah.  
Plead with your mother, plead: for she is not my wife, neither am I her husband: let her therefore put away her whoredoms out of her sight, and her adulteries from between her breasts;  
Lest I strip her naked, and set her AS in the day that she was born, and make her AS a wilderness, and set her LIKE a dry land, and slay her with thirst.***

**Hosea 2:1-3**

Notice in verse 3 how the Bible associates the tribulation period with the Exodus from Egypt:

**“AS in the day that she was born...”**

In Exodus 4:22, the Bible says, ***“Thus saith the Lord, Israel is my son, even my firstborn.”***

**“And make her AS a wilderness...”**

## Chapter 10 - The Two Most Important Words in the Bible

Everyone knows the forty year trip from Egypt to the promised land was through the wilderness.

**“And set her LIKE a dry land...”**

Also, it is a known fact this wilderness was not just any uninhabited land, but a desert.

If you will read carefully the rest of Hosea chapter 2 in that light, it will be abundantly obvious the tribulation period has one purpose: that God might restore the nation of Israel to Himself as His chosen people. It is also abundantly clear that the Exodus period is the key to understanding the events which will take place during that time.

Now, as you read those “boring” books of the Bible - Exodus, Leviticus, Numbers and Deuteronomy, you have a completely different concept of what you are reading. Doctrinally, all of these books picture the future events of the tribulation period. Most people make the mistake of thinking the book of Revelation is the only place to study the end times. Revelation is just the tip of the iceberg. If you really want to study the tribulation and second coming of Christ, the Old Testament will give you ninety percent of the material. Revelation just ties it all together.

These truths are evident just by paying attention to those little insignificant words: **AS** and **LIKE**. If I could have only two words marked in my Bible every time they appeared, it would be those two. As you study in the future, these two words should be immediate red flag warnings to you to stop and consider the comparison to find out what God is trying to teach you.

**Matthew 24:37** says:

***But AS the days of Noe were, so shall also the coming of the Son of man be.***

That verse ties the second coming to the days of Noah so you can learn about future events by studying Genesis 5-8.

**Luke 17:28** says:

***LIKEwise also AS it was in the days of Lot; they did eat, they drank, they bought, they sold, they planted, they builded.***

This association gives you spiritual truth in the light of the present day “gay rights” movement. **Hosea 2:3** says:

## Chapter 10 - The Two Most Important Words in the Bible

***Lest I strip her naked, and set her AS in the day that she was born, and make her AS a wilderness, and set her LIKE a dry land, and slay her with thirst.***

This comparison makes four entire books of the Bible come alive for you in showing you future truth, and puts you years ahead of anything Jeanne Dixon could ever come up with.

**Isaiah 53:7** says:

***He was oppressed, and he was afflicted, yet he opened not his mouth: he is brought AS a lamb to the slaughter, and AS a sheep before her shearers is dumb, so he openeth not his mouth.***

By associating the Lord Jesus Christ with a lamb and through dozens of similar associations, God can teach you spiritual truths by the examples He sets forth in the way He made the physical creation. We saw this in detail in the previous chapter. **Matthew 6:7-8** says:

***But when ye pray, use not vain repetitions, AS the heathen do: for they think that they shall be heard for their much speaking.  
Be not ye therefore LIKE unto them: for your Father knoweth what things ye have need of, before ye ask him.***

Through this association, God teaches you not to rely on the outward forms of religion, but to develop a personal relationship with Him.

**Ephesians 5:24-25** says:

***Therefore AS the church is subject unto Christ, so let the wives be to their own husbands in every thing.  
Husbands, love your wives, even AS Christ also loved the church, and gave himself for it.***

This comparison shows you the relationship you have to the Lord Jesus Christ as a saved person, and gives you the classic definition in the Bible of how a man and wife are to conduct themselves toward each other.

**1John 3:2** says:

***Beloved, now are we the sons of God, and it doth not yet appear what we shall be: but we know that, when he shall appear, we shall be LIKE him; for we shall see him AS he is.***

## Chapter 10 - The Two Most Important Words in the Bible

By the use of the words AS and LIKE, you learn from this passage that someday you will be perfectly conformed to the image of the Lord Jesus Christ in body and spirit, and will never again have to worry about sickness or death or pain or any other physical limitations. Every single one of these truths can easily be the subject of literally hours of study unlocking hundreds of great spiritual truths. Yet if you will notice, each one was uncovered by paying attention to the words AS and LIKE. There is no way to even begin to list the great truths you can find through these two words. The list is endless.

That is how God put the Bible together. It is centered around the plain simple words He chose to use. May you never be found guilty of changing those words or not believing every single one of them.

***Every word of God is pure.***

**Proverbs 30:5**

***Thy word is very pure: therefore thy  
servant loveth it.***

**Psalm 119:140**

## Chapter 10 - The Two Most Important Words in the Bible

# Chapter 11

## The Bible is a Picture Book

*Do not think that I will accuse you to the Father: there is one that accuseth you, even Moses, in whom ye trust.*

*For had ye believed Moses, ye would have believed me: for he wrote of me. But if ye believe not his writings, how shall ye believe my words?*

**John 5:45-47**

If you just charge through the Bible like the Schlitz malt liquor bull, not paying any attention to the individual words, you have broken one of the basic rules of Bible study: you didn't take every word seriously. Every single word in the Bible is there for a purpose - God doesn't do anything without a purpose. Some people think God just put a few things in the Bible because He was bored and didn't have anything else to do. Every word is important - even the genealogies.

Now that we have established the importance of the words **AS** and **LIKE**, it becomes apparent that the Bible is the greatest picture book ever written. Some editions of the Bible contain pictures of the Holy Land, Christ's ministry, or some of the Old Testament stories, and that is fine; but the real pictures are in the text, and they can be seen easily by simply paying attention to the words. The above passage quoted from John 5 will show you this picture book. Let's begin at **John 5:45**; Jesus Christ is speaking:

*Do not think that I will accuse you to the Father: there is one that accuseth you, even Moses, in whom ye trust.*

*For had ye believed Moses, ye would have believed me: for he wrote of me.*

In that verse, the Lord Jesus Christ said Moses wrote about Him. Of course,

## Chapter 11 - The Bible is a Picture Book

Moses wrote the first five books in the Bible, but nowhere does he write specifically about Jesus. He prophesies of Shiloh coming in Genesis 49, but there isn't one verse where the Lord Jesus Christ is specifically mentioned in the first five books of the Bible. Jesus said Moses wrote of Him, so either Jesus lied in John 5:46, or Moses really did write about Him. Of course, Moses wrote of Jesus - in pictures, types, and illustrations.

As I have mentioned before, God is your heavenly Father, and you are His child. If you expect to learn anything from Him, you must approach Him with the heart attitude of a child, and sit quietly at your Father's feet while He does the teaching. That is why God has written a picture book called the Bible.

You know how it is with kids. My wife and I have two girls, Kelly and Jaime, and every night we sit down with the children's book about the Bible and go over it with them. I would be a fool if I tried to teach my kids the Bible like this:

“Now Kelly and Jaime, I am going to teach you the Bible. Kids, tonight I want to talk to you about the New Heavens and the New Earth. The Bible says there are New Heavens and a New Earth, which come down from God in Revelation 22, which marks the beginning of another dispensation, the last dispensation before the ages of ages and eternity starts.”

“Now did you understand that, Kelly? Jaime, do you understand that? Quit picking your nose and wiping it on the couch, do you understand that?”

They don't understand it. Not only do they not understand, they couldn't care less. Or I could say, “Now Jaime, name for me the ten major dispensations in the Bible. Daddy is teaching you the Bible, I want you to grow up to be a good girl. Name the ten major dispensations in the Bible.”

She couldn't give me one of them. She would say, “Daddy, I don't want to play this anymore.”

Instead, I get a book of Bible stories and sit down with my kids and read to them. All through that book there are pictures about the stories I am reading. I like the pictures myself, too. The other night I was reading the story of David and Goliath. I would read about half a page and there would be a picture of David holding his little shepherd's staff with sheep all around him, standing there wearing a little dress with his skinny little legs sticking out. Then I would read a little further, and there would be a picture of Goliath - big, mean, and ugly, about ten feet tall wearing a German SS helmet and the whole works. Then a little later, there would be some more pictures of David killing Goliath. In a book like that, pictures are



used to illustrate what the words say.

That is the way you communicate to a little child what the Bible says. And don't ever forget - God is the Father, and we are His children. When God gave us a book, He gave us a book of little words, easy to understand, with pictures all the way through it to illustrate the words. All you have to do is find the pictures.

For instance, the Bible says, "As it was in the days of Noah, so shall it be in the coming of the Son of man."

That is a picture. What little kid from his Sunday school days doesn't know the story of Noah? God says if you want to study the second coming of Christ, study Noah because it is a picture of future events.

Jesus said to the Pharisees, "If you would have believed Moses, you would have believed me, because Moses wrote of me." But nowhere in the first five books of the Bible is Jesus ever mentioned specifically. The only places He is mentioned are in pictures, so allow me to show you some of them.

One of the greatest places to find the Lord Jesus Christ is in the first book of the Bible. Let's begin at **Genesis 22:1**:

*And it came to pass after these things, that God did tempt Abraham, and said unto him, Abraham: and he said, Behold, here I am.*

*And he said, Take now thy son, thine only son Isaac, whom thou lovest, and get thee into the land of Moriah; and offer him there for a burnt offering upon one of the mountains which I will tell thee of.*

*And Abraham rose up early in the morning, and saddled his ass, and took two of his young men with him, and Isaac his son, and clave the wood for the burnt offering, and rose up, and went unto the place of which God had told him.*

*Then on the third day Abraham lifted up his eyes, and saw the place afar off.*

*And Abraham said unto his young men, Abide ye here with the ass; and I and the lad will go yonder and worship, and come again to you.*

**Genesis 22:1-5**

Did you notice that? Abraham said they were going to come back, but God had just told him to go up there and kill his boy. Abraham knew something about the power of God. He believed God could raise Isaac from the dead.

## Chapter 11 - The Bible is a Picture Book

Look again at verse 2:

***And he said, Take thou thy son, thine only son Isaac, whom thou lovest...***

That is like God's son. Isaac is a picture of Jesus Christ. Isaac was going to be sacrificed, he was Abraham's only son, and Abraham loved him.

Now watch how this picture begins to unfold before your eyes.

***And Abraham said unto his young men, Abide ye here with the ass; and I and the lad will go yonder and worship, and come again to you.***

***And Abraham took the wood of the burnt offering, and laid it upon Isaac his son; and he took the fire in his hand, and a knife; and they went both of them together.***

**Genesis 22:5-6**

Abraham laid the wood on his son just like Jesus Christ carried the cross. There is a picture in here, folks.

Keep reading:

***And Isaac spake unto Abraham his father, and said, My father: and he said, Here am I, my son.***

***And he said, Behold the fire and the wood: but where is the lamb for a burnt offering? And Abraham said, My son, God will provide HIMSELF a lamb for a burnt offering: so they went both of them together.***

**Genesis 22:7-8**

That is a perfect picture of God offering Himself on Calvary's cross for our sins.

***And they came to the place which God had told him of; and Abraham built an altar there, and laid the wood in order, and bound Isaac his son, and laid him on the altar upon the wood.***

**Genesis 22:9**

Now there is something in that verse which goes beyond casual observation. Stop and think a minute - Abraham was well over one hundred years old at this point, while Isaac was just a young lad about fifteen-sixteen years old. Don't tell me that old man could have wrestled that boy to the ground and tied him up if Isaac didn't want him to. That is a picture of total obedience to a father. Isaac trusted God as much as Abraham did, and Isaac had the power to willingly lay down his own life. In **John 10:17-18**, Jesus Christ said:

***Therefore doth my Father love me, because I lay down my life, that I might take it again. No man taketh it from me, but I lay it down of myself. I have power to lay it down, and I have power to take it again. This commandment have I received of my Father.***

Let's get back to the story - Genesis 22:9-10 says:

***And they came to the place which God had told him of; and Abraham built an altar there, and laid the wood in order, and bound Isaac his son, and laid him on the altar upon the wood.***

***And Abraham stretched forth his hand, and took the knife to slay his son.***

That is a real test of faith. Imagine what was going through Abraham's mind! The night before they got to the mountain, they were probably sitting around a campfire, and Abraham knew exactly what would happen the next day, while the boy didn't. Imagine the scene. Abraham knew the next day he would have to kill his boy, the boy he had wanted all his life, the one God promised would bring forth an entire nation. Isaac was his only son, "**whom thou lovest.**" About that time the old man looked into the fire thinking about the next day when he had to kill his son, when Isaac sat down beside him and said, "Dad I sure do love you. Boy, you are the best dad in the world."

All Abraham could do was silently look into the fire.

Isaac snuggled up next to him, and put his arm around him, and leaned over and kissed his dad as they both pulled down an old rough sack to lie down in the dirt to go to sleep. If you look closely, you can see tears running down Abraham's face because he knows what will take place the next day.

When they got up in the morning, God said, "Abraham, here is the place."

As Abraham took his son up there and began to prepare the altar, Isaac said, "Father, here is the wood and the fire, but where is the sacrifice?"

The old man began to tremble and said, "Son, God will provide himself a lamb."

Then he bound the boy's hand and Isaac said, "Daddy, what are you doing?"

Abraham explained to him, and Isaac submitted. He laid his boy on the altar, reached over for the knife, and walked over to his son and said, "Lord, I love you. I don't understand what you want me to do, but I love you and know you mean the

## Chapter 11 - The Bible is a Picture Book

best and will work it out.” As Abraham raised the knife, he said, “I don't understand, God, but you taught me a long time ago never to doubt in the darkness what you have given in the light. Now I don't understand this, but I know you are God and I will do what you told me.”

Abraham raised the knife over his head, began to plunge it into his boy, and about the time the blade was one millionth of an inch from Isaac's breast, the hand of God came out and stopped him. Then God told Abraham to look in the bushes, and there he found a ram to offer in Isaac's stead.

What Abraham didn't realize is God would do the same thing to His Son about two thousand years later, only God would not stay His hand. Once you really understand the emotion Abraham must have felt that day, then you look at your own salvation in a different light. When you realize the perfect, holy God of this universe allowed His only Son to be murdered for you - when He didn't have to do it - then you will understand the perfect love of God.

Genesis 22 is a picture of the crucifixion of the Lord Jesus Christ typified in Isaac. Jesus Christ said, “For had ye believed Moses, ye would have believed me: for he wrote of me.”

Let's look at another picture of the Lord Jesus Christ in Moses' writings in **Exodus 12:1-13**:

*And the Lord spake unto Moses and Aaron in the land of Egypt, saying, This month shall be unto you the beginning of months: it shall be the first month of the year to you.*

*Speak ye unto all the congregation of Israel, saying, In the tenth day of this month they shall take to them every man a lamb, according to the house of their fathers, a lamb for an house:*

*And if the household be too little for the lamb, let him and his neighbor next unto his house take it according to the number of the souls; every man according to his eating shall make your count for the lamb.*

*Your lamb shall be without blemish, a male of the first year: ye shall take it out from the sheep, or from the goats:*

*And ye shall keep it up unto the fourteenth day of the same month: and the whole assembly of the congregation of Israel shall kill it in the evening.*

*And they shall take of the blood, and strike it on the two side posts and on the upper door post of the houses, wherein they shall eat it.*

***And they shall eat the flesh in that night, roast with fire, and unleavened bread; and with bitter herbs they shall eat it.***

***Eat not of it raw, nor sodden at all with water, but roast with fire; his head with his legs, and with the purtenance thereof.***

***And ye shall let nothing of it remain until the morning; and that which remaineth of it until the morning ye shall bum with fire.***

***And thus shall ye eat it; with your loins girded, your shoes on your feet, and your staff in your hand; and ye shall eat it in haste: it is the Lord's passover.***

***For I will pass through the land of Egypt this night, and will smite all the firstborn in the land of Egypt, both man and beast; and against all the gods of Egypt I will execute judgment: I am the Lord.***

***And the blood shall be to you for a token upon the houses where ye are: and when I see the blood, I will pass over you, and the plague shall not be upon you to destroy you, when I smite the land of Egypt.***

This is a beautiful picture of the Lord Jesus Christ. When John the Baptist came out of the wilderness and saw the Lord Jesus Christ coming, he said, "Behold the Lamb of God which taketh away the sin of the world." He said Jesus was a lamb. Every Jew in Israel knew exactly what John was referring to when he said that.

In Exodus 12 the nation of Israel was in bondage. God said, "Now, I will deliver you tonight out of your bondage by killing all the firstborn of Egypt. Israel, what you need to do is get a lamb and kill it. But it has to be a special lamb, a male of the first year, it shall be taken out of the sheep or out of the goats, and it has to be without blemish."

In the book of Colossians, when the Bible talks about the blood of Christ, it refers to Him as the lamb without spot, slain before the foundation of the world.

So God tells them in Exodus 12 to take the lamb and kill it, and put the blood on their door in three places: the left side post of the door, the right side post of the door, and on the top. Whoever gave those instructions must have had a glimpse of Calvary. How could Moses know there would be three crosses on Calvary? Why didn't they just put one big bloody smear in the middle of the door? The reason is because there was a thief on the left, and another thief on the right, and the Lord Jesus Christ in the middle.

Notice, He is numbered with them (as being numbered with the transgressors in Isaiah 53:12), but He is higher than they are, because He is deity.

## Chapter 11 - The Bible is a Picture Book

Look again at verse 8:

***“And they shall eat the flesh in that night, roast with fire, and unleavened bread; and with bitter herbs they shall eat it.”***

In verse 9 it says,

***“Eat not of it raw, nor sodden at all with water...”***

**NO WATER.** When Jesus was on the cross, He cried out, “I thirst!”, but He didn't get any water. On the cross, He said, “My God, My God, why hast thou forsaken me?” That is a picture of a man in Hell. Verses 8 through 10 make it clear that the lamb is to be roasted with fire, another picture of a man in Hell.

Now look at verse 13:

***“And the blood shall be to you for a token upon the houses where ye are: and when I see the blood, I will pass over you.”***

One of these days, Jesus Christ is coming back. When He does, He will judge mankind and determine their eternal destiny. Do you know what will be the deciding factor whether you go to heaven or hell? **BLOOD.** If God sees the blood of the Lamb applied to you, He will pass over you.

Let me illustrate. I can go to the airport and watch hundreds of people get on airplanes. Then I can get in line, walk up to the gate and say, “I want to get on this airplane.”

The guy says, “Fine, can I see your ticket?”

“I don't have a ticket.”

“You must have a ticket.”

“Well, you let so and so on, and I am just as good a person as he is.”

“Yes, but he had a ticket.”

“But if you knew what I know about him; you wouldn't let him on the airplane.”

“I don't care anything about him; he had a ticket. If you have a ticket, you can get on the plane. Otherwise, no ticket, no ride.”

“Well, that's just your interpretation.”

“No one is interpreting anything! Do you have a ticket or not?!?!”

“No, but I am a Baptist.”

I don't care if you are a Baptist or not. If you have a ticket you can ride the plane - no ticket, no plane ride. Do you understand that?”

It is the same way with God - no blood, no heaven.

Have you ever REALLY studied your Bible? Did you ever take that book and sit down and really look at it? Do you ever get on your knees and say, "God take this book and show me and teach me by it?" What you need to do is sincerely ask God to give you some truth and then look at God's picture book.

For instance, the lamb in Exodus 12 is not just any lamb, it is a special lamb. First of all, it is a male, just like Jesus Christ. In verse 6 they were told to keep it until the fourteenth day of the same month and then the whole assembly of the congregation of Israel was to kill it.

They are the ones who killed the Lord Jesus Christ. It wasn't the Roman soldiers, the nation of Israel looked at Him in Pilate's judgment hall and said, "His blood be upon us and our children." It was Israel's choice, the Roman soldiers just carried out the execution according to Israel's wishes.

Now I will show you something else about this lamb which reveals the magnitude of the mind behind your Bible. Look at **Exodus 12:3**:

***Speak ye unto all the congregation of Israel, saying, In the tenth day of this month they shall take to them every man A lamb....***

They were supposed to get A lamb; **A** lamb must shed the blood. But it is not just any lamb; look at verse 4:

***And if the household be too little for THE lamb....***

It has to be "**THE** lamb", a specific lamb chosen according to God's specifications.

But that is not all, look at verse 5:

***YOUR lamb shall be without blemish....***

**THE** lamb has to be appropriated to **YOU**.

What a magnificent illustration of how every single word of the Bible is important. The first thing you need is A lamb; exactly what Israel needed. But not just any lamb will do, it must be **THE** lamb; the Lord Jesus Christ. But you can know all about **THE** lamb and "believe" in Him as a "great teacher", but it is not enough. You must take **THE** lamb and make him **YOUR** lamb. That is what Israel had to do at the Passover, and it is what you need to do to be saved. The lamb of the Passover in Exodus 12 is a picture of the Lord Jesus Christ.

Let's look at God's picture book one more time in Numbers 21, beginning with verse 6:

*And the Lord sent fiery serpents among the people, and they bit the people; and much people of Israel died.*

*Therefore the people came to Moses, and said, We have sinned, for we have spoken against the Lord, and against thee; pray unto the Lord, that he take away the serpents from us. And Moses prayed for the people.*

*And the Lord said unto Moses, Make thee a fiery serpent, and set it upon a pole: and it shall come to pass, that every one that is bitten, when he looketh upon it, shall live.*

*And Moses made a serpent of brass, and put it upon a pole, and it came to pass, that if a serpent had bitten any man, when he beheld the serpent of brass, he lived.*

**Numbers 21:6-9**

That is a picture of the Lord Jesus Christ, which Jesus Himself explained in John 3:14: And **AS**...(Remember that word?)

*And AS Moses lifted up the serpent in the wilderness, even so must the Son of man be lifted up:*

*That whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have eternal life.*

When Moses made the brazen serpent and put it on a pole, it was a perfect picture of Jesus Christ on the cross. In most church hymnals, there is a song entitled "Look and Live". Moses told the children of Israel that if they would look at the serpent after they had been bitten, they would live. Everyone in this world at some time in their life has been bitten by the Devil; and in the Bible, the Devil is called a serpent. Because you were bitten, you became a sinner, and will die if you don't take the antidote. You can't cure yourself, so what you need is someone to take your place. Jesus Christ became a serpent for you on the cross of Calvary and when you look at the cross, you live. That is a classic illustration of God's picture book - **the Holy Bible**.

Now these are three of the most obvious pictures seen in the Bible. There are literally hundreds of such pictures in both Testaments for every kind of spiritual truth imaginable. I have only given you these obvious ones to show you the principle and get you started in finding them. You can spend the rest of your life finding these pictures and unlocking the great truths of the word of God by simply paying attention to the simple individual words in the Bible, by comparing scripture with scripture, and just believing what you read.

I trust and pray you will apply the truths of these pictures to your life. Just knowing about these pictures is not enough. The benefit comes when the lessons taught in the word of God are used to transform your life and mold you into the man or woman God wants you to be.



# Chapter 12

## Key Words and Phrases

*Every word of God is pure: he is a shield unto them that put their trust in him.*

**Proverbs 30:5**

We now come to the most important chapter in this book. We have already covered a wealth of material, and studied several keys to understanding the Bible. I have put you well on the road to getting the treasures God has for you in His book. However, everything in the preceding pages has been simply a foundation for what will be covered in this chapter. If you have come this far prayerfully, sincerely believing the word of God, and genuinely desiring the truth, then this chapter will make your Bible really come alive for you.

Before we begin, let's quickly review the foundation so far. First, you must realize the Bible is not hard to understand. We make it hard by not paying attention to every word God says, and by not being responsive to the Holy Spirit as He guides and illuminates us. Next, you must realize it is the Holy Spirit of God who teaches the Bible, and you will never get anything out of it unless God's Holy Spirit gives it to you. Also, it is imperative to get the divisions in the proper places, primarily these:

**(1) Who is being addressed in a particular passage, the Jew, the Gentile, or the Church?**

**(2) The three different applications of scripture: Historical, Doctrinal, and Inspirational.**

In addition, you must realize the best way to learn is by association. To understand the things you can't see, study the things God made, because everything in this

## Chapter 12 - Key Words and Phrases

universe is some manifestation of God. We also saw the two greatest words in the Bible for learning by association are the words AS and LIKE. Further, the Bible is the most basic, simple book in this world because God wrote it with His words; and God, my Heavenly Father, gave me, a little child, a picture book which teaches me about those words.

Now this picture book God has given us has certain keys which unlock the pictures and help you see them. Those keys are the INDIVIDUAL WORDS contained in the Bible. Proverbs 30:5 says:

***Every word of God is pure.***

Let that sink in a minute - don't just pass by it lightly. The Bible says EVERY WORD OF GOD IS PURE. Do you know what that verse really means? It means **every word of God is pure**. (“Interpreting” the Bible is easy - it means exactly what it says.) I cannot emphasize too greatly the importance of understanding the basic little words in the Bible.

Here in this chapter, it will become abundantly obvious why I teach, preach, and believe only one book: the **Authorized King James Bible**. Perhaps you did not understand why I spent an entire chapter earlier explaining this. If so, pay attention closely in this chapter and you should see why it is so important to stick to one book. The principles explained in this chapter will not work with any other “version” of the Bible.

Before you are finished with this, you will understand why it is so important not to change the words in the Bible. We are living in a day and age in which so many people want to “upgrade” the word of God, sincerely believing they are making the Bible easier to understand. In reality, they make it so confusing you couldn't find anything in the Bible if you stayed up all night and searched with a laser beam and a flashlight. God gave us the Bible exactly the way He wanted us to have it, and when someone changes the words in the Bible, it destroys the word of God. I am not talking about explaining or trying to clarify the so-called “archaic” words, I am talking about changing the text and taking words out and putting different words in like they do in the new “bibles”.

In this chapter, we will establish a base of key words and phrases in the Bible. The individual words of the Bible are the key to understanding the things of the Bible. Now it will be impossible to study in detail all of the key words of the Bible, primarily because I don't know all of them! Instead, we will just look at the

major ones, and allow you to study others on your own.

Over the years, as I have come through the Bible, God has shown me several words and phrases that once you learn what they mean in the Bible (not in Webster's dictionary), they will interpret the word of God for you. You don't have to worry about “interpreting” the Bible for yourself.

Noah Webster was a saved man who believed the word of God. He published a dictionary around 1828 in which he defined words in the English language primarily as they were used in the Bible, and gave scripture references for words found in the Bible. Of course, over the years this edition has been “updated” (?) to remove the Biblical references. The 1828 edition has been recently published again, and is an excellent dictionary.

However, one must never forget, Noah Webster is NOT the final authority in all matters of faith and practice, regardless of his ability to handle the English language. All of my Christian life, I have heard preachers refer to Webster's dictionary to define Biblical words such as faith, repentance, grace, justification, etc. There is nothing wrong with using Webster as an aid to help you understand the general meaning of a word, but in the final analysis, you need to understand the Biblical definition of the word.

One principle you must always remember is the Bible contains its own definitions. These definitions are found by tracing a word through the entire Bible to see how God uses it, and by comparing scripture with scripture. An exhaustive concordance is very helpful for this purpose.

God gave us a book designed so you do not have to interpret anything. The Bible interprets itself through a simple word system found in the word of God.

If God wanted to impress everybody, you would think He would use big words; however, this is not the case, instead He uses little words. In fact, we saw in Chapter 10 the two most profound words in the Bible are AS and LIKE, and in Chapter 1, I showed you how the Bible gets its message across using primarily one syllable words.

Now I will show you some key words which will define what the Bible is talking about. I have gone very slowly, taking several chapters to lay a good foundation, and in this chapter, we will “Study to shew ourselves approved unto God”.

As you read the Bible, especially in the Old Testament, you will find the phrase “the day of the Lord” over and over. That phrase is a major key in the Bible.

## Chapter 12 - Key Words and Phrases

Now sometimes you won't find the words "the day of the Lord" exactly, instead you might find "the day" or "that day", but one of these three phrases will establish the context of a particular passage.

When you find the phrase "the day of the Lord", or "the day", or "that day", the immediate context will be the second coming of the Lord Jesus Christ. That holds for the New Testament as well as the Old Testament. In the broader context, you may find the tribulation period lapping over into the second coming, or you may find the second coming lapping over into the Millennium, but the main focal point will be the period of time around the second coming of the Lord Jesus Christ. Why is it called "the day of the Lord?" Someone says, "The Bible calls it the day of the Lord because that is the day the Lord comes back." Well, that is true, but that is not the whole reason. Let's define this phrase from the word of God. Look at Malachi 4, and we will begin in verse 1. Of course, we know from our earlier study in rightly dividing the word of truth, Malachi is written to the nation of Israel. Watch what it says:

***For, behold, THE DAY cometh...***

See it? The context is the second coming.

***...that shall burn AS an oven; and all the proud, yea, and all that do wickedly, shall be stubble....***

(Here it comes again just in case you missed it the first time.)

***...and THE DAY that cometh shall burn them up, saith the Lord of hosts, that it shall leave them neither root nor branch.***

***But unto you that fear my name shall the Sun of righteousness arise with healing in his wings; and ye shall go forth, and grow up AS calves of the stall.***

***And ye shall tread down the wicked; for they shall be ashes under the soles of your feet in the day that I shall do this, saith the Lord of hosts.***

***Remember ye the law of Moses my servant, which I commanded unto him in Horeb for all Israel, with the statutes and judgments.***

***Behold, I will send you Elijah the prophet before the coming of the great and dreadful DAY OF THE LORD.***

**Malachi 4:1-5**

Notice how this "day" is connected with a "coming" in verse 4. In Matthew 17:10 the disciples asked Jesus, "Why then say the scribes that Elias (Elijah) must first come?" They said this because they read Malachi 4:4 which says Elijah will come

back before the second coming.

Mark it down, anytime you find the phrase “the day of the Lord” in the Bible, the immediate context will always be the second coming of the Lord Jesus Christ. That is very vital when you read the Old Testament. Many people think the Old Testament is boring; yes it is, if you don't have the keys. If you sit down in a Corvette, it becomes boring after a while if you don't have the keys. If you get the keys, you can enjoy yourself. It is exactly the same with the Bible - only the Bible is a lot faster than a Corvette.

Let's look at another passage in Joel 2. Now I just picked Joel 2, but you can go about anywhere in the Old Testament and find it. The entire Old Testament deals with the “day of the Lord” because that is the theme of the Bible.

**Joel 2:1** says:

***Blow ye the trumpet in lion, and sound an alarm in my holy mountain: let all the inhabitants of the land tremble: for THE DAY OF THE LORD cometh, for it is nigh at hand.***

Now as I read that, I immediately note the doctrinal context is the second coming of Jesus Christ. Now realize something - you will never understand every detail of the Bible. I learned long ago that as long as I know the general context, I don't have to understand all the details right now. God will take care of the details, and show them to me in time. Now look at verses 2-4:

***A DAY of darkness and of gloominess, a DAY of clouds and of thick darkness, AS the morning spread upon the mountains...***

Notice the “morning” again, as we discussed earlier, the Biblical “time” of the second coming.

***...A great people and a strong; there hath not been ever the LIKE, neither shall be any more after it, even to the years of many generations.***

***A fire devoureth before them; and behind them a flame burneth: the land is AS the garden of Eden before them, and behind them a desolate wilderness; yea, and nothing shall escape them.***

***The appearance of them is AS the appearance of horses; and AS horsemen, so shall they run.***

Beginning in the middle of verse 2, through verse 11, the passage describes the army accompanying the Lord on His return. That will be us, the church age saints.

## Chapter 12 - Key Words and Phrases

I used to like to watch the Lone Ranger; he was always a mystery guy with a big white horse. That is the kind of horse I want when I get home to glory. Most Christians think it would be great to go in the rapture of the church. Yes, it probably would, but I think it would be OK to die before then, too. Those who get raptured will have to take the horses that are left, all the people who died before get to pick out their horses first. I would probably get up there and get some old broken down nag that couldn't go past first gear. Just kidding folks, the horses God has don't break down. Look at verse 5:

***LIKE the noise of chariots on the tops of mountains shall they leap....***

That is jumping! That is some horse! You should hear an F-111 Tom Cat take off and go across the deck about a hundred and fifty feet off the ground with afterburners going about three hundred miles an hour. The roar is deafening. You don't see it coming or hear it until it goes by, but when it goes by, it will rattle your teeth. That is the way my horse will go.

***LIKE the noise of chariots on the tops of mountains shall they leap, LIKE the noise of a flame of fire that devoureth the stubble, AS a strong people set in battle array.***

***Before their face the people shall be much pained: all faces shall gather blackness. They shall run LIKE mighty men; they shall climb the wall LIKE men of war, and they shall march every one on his ways, and they shall not break their ranks:***

***Neither shall one thrust another; they shall walk every one in his path: and when they fall upon the sword, they shall not be wounded.***

**Joel 2:5-9**

All this refers to the church coming back with the Lord Jesus Christ at His second coming. I used to wonder why it was called "the day of the Lord", and then I would read and think to myself, "Boy, what a day, that will be some day." Have you every heard the expression, "That'll be the day"? That WILL be the day, brother!

Someone once said the price of learning is repetition, so lets look at another example in Zechariah 12.

Zechariah 12 is probably the greatest single chapter in the Bible on the Lord's coming outside of maybe Revelation 19.

Begin with Zechariah 12:1-2:

*The burden of the word of the Lord for Israel, saith the Lord, which stretcheth forth the heavens, and layeth the foundation of the earth, and formeth the spirit of man within him.*

*Behold, I will make Jerusalem a cup of trembling unto all the people round about, when they shall be in the siege both against Judah and against Jerusalem.*

Now watch carefully-verse 3:

*And in THAT DAY..*

Verse 6:

*In THAT DAY..*

Verse 8:

*In THAT DAY..*

Verse 9:

*And it shall come to pass in THAT DAY..*

Verse 11:

*In THAT DAY..*

Once you have the keys, the Bible comes alive. You could have read Zechariah 12 a dozen times without knowing the day of the Lord was the second coming and it would have been a closed book to you. Now you can read it and find a multitude of truth about the second coming by simply paying attention to the seemingly insignificant little one syllable words any idiot can read: **THE DAY OF THE LORD, THE DAY, or THAT DAY.**

Now let's look at this one more time in **Hosea 6**, beginning at verse 1 through 3:

*Come, and let us return unto the Lord: for he hath torn, and he will heal us; he hath smitten, and he will bind us up.*

*After two DAYS will he revive us: in the third DAY he will raise us up, and we shall live in his sight.*

*Then shall we know, if we follow on to know the Lord: his going forth is prepared AS the morning; and he shall come unto us AS the rain, AS the latter and former rain unto the earth.*

That one little passage is a bombshell. It would take about fifteen hours to fully

## Chapter 12 - Key Words and Phrases

expound through the word of God, first of all because of that little word AS. The Bible says the second coming is “AS the rain, AS the latter and the former rain unto the earth.” The former and the latter rain in the Bible will date the second coming of the Lord Jesus Christ. But notice please the context is the second coming of the Lord Jesus Christ, and NOT the so-called “out-pouring” of the “spirit” talked about by modern Charismatics. That is why people get messed up in the Bible. They take passages out of context to try to prove the theology they already believe. Hosea 6:3 is describing the events just prior to the second coming of Christ. We still have a full dispensation to go between now and then (the tribulation). The only way to make that passage fit the modern Charismatic Movement is to twist the scriptures, or as Peter said, to “wrest the scriptures to their own destruction.”

***...His going forth is prepared AS the morning...***

Comparing scripture with scripture, watch what happens in the Biblical “morning”. Look at 2Peter 1:19:

***We have also a more sure word of prophecy; whereunto ye do well that ye take heed, AS unto a light that shineth in a dark place, until the DAY dawn, and the DAY star arise in your hearts.***

That is a picture of the coming of the Lord Jesus Christ. Peter calls him “the day star”. All you need is a 6th grade education to understand what the day star is; it is the sun. In a previous chapter, we learned the sun or the star is a type of the Lord Jesus Christ. In **Revelation 22:16** the Bible says:

***I Jesus have sent mine angel to testify unto you these things in the churches. I am the root and the offspring of David, and the bright and morning star.***

So when the Bible calls Jesus “the day star” or “the bright and morning star”, it is referring to the Lord Jesus Christ at His coming; He will come AS the morning, when the DAY star rises. He comes in the biblical “morning” and it is pictured in the physical creation by the sun coming up.

Looking back in **Hosea 6:2** the Bible says:

***After two DAYS will he revive us [Israel]: In the third DAY he will raise us up [restoration of Israel at second coming] ,and we shall live in his sight [Millennium].***

As we have seen, the word DAY is a very important key in the Bible. But what you must understand is “the day of the Lord” is not just a twenty-four hour period,



## Chapter 12 - Key Words and Phrases

or one day as we think of a day; that day lasts one thousand years and goes into eternity.

**2Peter 3:8** says:

***...That one day is with the Lord AS a thousand years, and a thousand years AS one day.***

The “day” of the second coming begins with His coming back to this earth, lasts for one thousand years while the millennial reign takes place, and then goes right on into eternity and never ends.

So if you were paying attention in Hosea 6:2, you have the general time of the second coming: After two days - after two thousand years of the church age, or approximately 2000 AD. (I just threw that in free-no extra charge.)

Let's look at another key phrase in **Philippians 1**, and to get the entire context, begin at verse 1:

***Paul and Timotheus, the servants of Jesus Christ, to all the saints in Christ Jesus which are at Philippi, with the bishops and deacons:***

***Grace be unto you, and peace, from God our Father, and from the Lord Jesus Christ.***

***I thank my God upon every remembrance of you,***

***Always in every prayer of mine for you all making request with joy,***

***For your fellowship in the gospel from the first day until now;***

***Being confident of this very thing, that he which hath begun a good work in you will perform it until the day of Jesus Christ.***

**Philippians 1:1-6**

The next phrase I want to look at is “the day of Jesus Christ”, or “the day of Christ”.

Of course, ninety-five percent of the Bible colleges and so-called Bible teachers will tell you the day of Jesus Christ and the day of the Lord are the same. They are NOT the same! The reason they are not the same is because they stand for two different events, and I will show that to you. When you study the day of the Lord compared with the day of Christ, you are on the verge of one of the greatest studies in the word of God, yet it is one of the most neglected. The biggest reason people get messed up in the Bible and don't rightly divide the word of truth is because they do not understand simple things like the difference between the day of the Lord and the day of Jesus Christ.

## Chapter 12 - Key Words and Phrases

Another classic is the people who believe the kingdom of God and the kingdom of heaven are the same. They are NOT the same. Heaven and God are NOT identical! Genesis 1:1 says, “In the beginning GOD created the HEAVENS...” By making the kingdoms identical you mess up the very first verse in the Bible!

Someone says, “Well, God is Jesus Christ and Jesus Christ is God, therefore the day of the Lord and the day of Christ must be the same.” Who gave you the right to privately interpret the Bible like that? God never told you that. If anyone could show me one verse in the Bible where the day of the Lord and the day of Jesus Christ are the same, I would give them a million dollars. You say, “You couldn't raise the money.” I could raise it before they could find the verse.

**The “day of the Lord” is the second coming of Jesus Christ. The “day of Christ” is the rapture of the church.**

Let me show you the difference. Look very carefully at **Philippians 1:6**:

***Being confident of this very thing, that he which hath begun a good work IN YOU will perform it until the day of Jesus Christ.***

This is one of the greatest verses in the Bible on the eternal security of the born again believer in the church age. When you get saved, God begins a good work IN YOU through the indwelling Holy Spirit. We have already seen that the day of the Lord is connected with the second coming of Christ. By confusing the two phrases, you make the Bible teach heresy. If the day of Jesus Christ in Philippians 1:6 is the second coming, then the church must go through the tribulation.

Now look at 2Thessalonians 2; this is where it gets a little clearer. Begin at verse 1:

***Now we beseech you, brethren, by the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ, and by our gathering together unto him.***

Notice how the context of this chapter deals with two different events as described in verse 1: “the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ” (**second coming**) and “our gathering together unto him” (**rapture of the church**). That is very clear just by reading the words.

Now watch how the Bible distinguishes between the two events so carefully by the use of those simple little one-syllable key words which ANYONE can understand if they will just believe what they read. Look at verse 2:

***That ye be not soon shaken in mind, or be troubled, neither by spirit, nor by word, nor by letter as from us, as that THE DAY OF CHRIST is at hand.***

We have already seen that the day of Christ is the rapture of the church. Paul is telling the Thessalonians not to be worried about going through the tribulation because the rapture is AT HAND. Then he continues in verse 3:

***Let no man deceive you by any means: for THAT DAY [second coming, remember?] shall not come, except there come a falling away first, and that man of sin be revealed, the son of perdition;***

***Who opposeth and exalteth himself above all that is called God, or that is worshipped; so that he as God sitteth in the temple of God, shewing himself that he is God. Remember ye not, that, when I was yet with you, I told you these things?***

Notice how careful Paul is to distinguish between the rapture and the second coming. He tells them the second coming must be preceded by a falling away first and then a revealing of the son of perdition, the Anti-Christ. But he said in verse 2 not to get shook up about it because the rapture will precede all of that mess because “THE DAY OF CHRIST is at hand”.

**The Bible is a very easy book to understand once you have the keys!**

Now let me digress for a moment. I usually don't like to depart from studying the Bible, but sometimes it is necessary. The new “bibles” change “the day of Christ” to “the day of the Lord” in 2Thessalonians 2:2 and they end up teaching heresy as a result. The reason the revisers do that is ignorance. They don't know there is a difference between the two because they don't RIGHTLY DIVIDE the word of truth. What happens when you change the day of Christ to the day of the Lord is the passage is thrown completely out of context. The day of the Lord is the second coming, and the day of Jesus Christ is the rapture. That is the biggest problem with the so-called new “bibles”. In ignorance, the revisers change the little seemingly insignificant words to try to make it “clearer” and end up teaching heresy. That is why the only Bible I believe and teach is the King James Authorized Version. It is the word of God. Every other English version available makes changes like that which destroy the clear teachings of the word of God. Now that you have an understanding of the difference between the day of Christ

## Chapter 12 - Key Words and Phrases

and the day of the Lord, I want to stop for a minute and show you something in the Bible most Christians don't even know is there, but which is one of the greatest keys to understanding the Old Testament, and God's relationship to His people, the Jews. It will show conclusively the difference between the day of Christ and the day of the Lord, and show you how to keep them straight in your own mind.

This is very basic, but in the Bible, there is God the Father, and He has a Son, the Lord Jesus Christ. In an earlier chapter, we talked about having the divisions in the right place. And of course, the one primary division is between the Old Testament and the New Testament. The thing you must get straight in your mind when you read the Bible is you cannot apply everything in the Old Testament strictly and doctrinally to your own personal life. In the Old Testament, the Jews had to do things you do not have to do. For instance, in the Old Testament they couldn't have a bathroom in the house. You probably have one - I hope. They could not hang pictures on the wall, but you can. God had them keep laws and standards we do not have to keep. For instance, when I do something wrong, I get alone with God and say, "God I am sorry, please forgive me." When they did something wrong, they had to go out and get a lamb, or a turtle dove, or whatever, and take it to the priest who would kill it and sprinkle the blood all over everything. In the Old Testament, nobody could touch a dead body without certain consequences. If a man was to die at my church, I could pick him up and carry him to my office, then go through his wallet and take his money out before calling his folks to come and get him (just kidding). If I was in the Old Testament and I did that, I couldn't go home for seven days. I would just wander around and people would say, "Don't get around Bob; he touched a dead guy, he is unclean." But in the New Testament, if I touch a dead person, there are no laws about it. There is an Old Testament, and a New Testament, and all of the details between them are NOT the same.

Now, the Lord Jesus Christ has a bride, described in the books of Revelation, Corinthians and Ephesians, and His bride is the church. Some day there will be a wedding. The corporate body of Christ will be married to the Lord Jesus Christ, and He will take us on a thousand year honeymoon called the Millennium.

I normally don't like to do weddings. No offense, it's just that once you have done one, you have done them all. Sometime, I would like to do something spectacular, like marry a couple in the middle of 1-70, during rush hour, or something like that. But weddings are a beautiful picture of our coming marriage to the Lord. The groom is not supposed to see the bride that day before the appointed time. And, of course, she is so careful; she gets to the church before he does with her hair in

Campbell's soup cans, and sneaks in and puts on her beautiful white gown standing for purity. She has a veil on, and she is a mystery behind that veil. Of course, the guy always dresses in black (because he is going to a funeral, I guess). The preacher always wears black, too. (I wear the same suit for weddings and funerals because there's not a whole lot of difference, except at the funeral I am the only one doing the talking.)

When the big moment comes, the bride comes to the bridegroom, and it is very picturesque; the typology is beautiful. Marriage ceremonies are nothing more than a picture of the body of Christ coming to the Lord Jesus Christ at the rapture of the church.

You don't find marriage ceremonies in the Bible. We have put them together to satisfy our own longing for tradition and ceremony, but they are nothing more than a picture of what will happen to the saved multitudes of the church age some day when the bride will come to the bridegroom, the Lord Jesus Christ. "What a day, glorious day that will be!"

Notice, the bride comes to the bridegroom; that is what we will do, we will come to Christ at the rapture. The bride dresses in white, a picture of purity. The Bible likens the church to a virgin in 2Corinthians 11.

So the Lord Jesus Christ has a bride, and with His bride is the day of the wedding: the day of Jesus Christ. That is very important. Don't confuse it with what I am about to tell you. What I am about to tell you is probably foreign to many ears, but the fact is, God the Father also has a wife. I told someone that once, and he just about fell out of his seat. But, let's look at what the Bible says in **Hosea 2**, beginning at verse 1:

*Say ye unto your brethren, Ammi; and to your sisters, Ruhamah.*

*Plead with your mother, plead: for she is not my wife, neither am I her husband: let her therefore put away her whoredoms out of her sight, and her adulteries from between her breasts;*

*Lest I strip her naked, and set her as in the day that she was born, and make her as a wilderness, and set her like a dry land, and slay her with thirst.*

*And I will not have mercy upon her children; for they be the children of whoredoms.*

*For their mother hath played the harlot: she that conceived them hath done shamefully: for she said, I will go after my lovers, that give me my*

Chapter 12 - Key Words and Phrases

*bread and my water, my wool and my flax, mine oil and my drink.  
Therefore, behold, I will hedge up thy way with thorns, and make a wall,  
that she shall not find her paths.*

*And she shall follow after her lovers, but she shall not overtake them; and  
she shall seek them, but shall not find them: then shall she say, I will go  
and return to my first husband: for then was it better with me than now.*

*For she did not know that I gave her com, and wine, and oil,  
and multiplied her silver and gold, which they prepared for Baal.*

*Therefore will I return, and take away my com in the time thereof, and my  
wine in the season thereof, and will recover my wool and my flax given to  
cover her nakedness.*

*And now will I discover her lewdness in the sight of her lovers, and none  
shall deliver her out of mine hand.*

*I will also cause all her mirth to cease, her feast days, her new moons, and  
her Sabbaths, and all her solemn feasts.*

**Hosea 2:1-11**

As you read that passage, you may have thought it was a story about a man and his wife, until it starts talking about offering things to Baal, and about keeping feasts and new moons and Sabbaths. That is Israel. Keep reading: verse 12:

*And I will destroy her vines and her fig trees, whereof she hath said, These  
are my rewards that my lovers have given me: and I will make them a  
forest, and the beasts of the field shall eat them.*

*And I will visit upon her the days of Baalim, wherein she burned incense  
to them, and she decked herself with her earrings and her jewels, and she  
went after her lovers, and forgot me, saith the LORD.*

**Hosea 2:12-13**

Of course, you must realize that most of the time the Bible speaks of adultery, it is not talking about physical adultery between a man and a woman, but about spiritual adultery. Physical adultery is when a man or a woman steps out on their partner; spiritual adultery is when we step out on God. In other words, we let something else take the place of God in our lives.

Let's see again how Israel is God's wife in Isaiah 54, beginning with verses 1-5:

*Sing, O barren, thou that didst not bear; break forth into singing, and cry  
aloud, thou that didst not travail with child: for more are the children of  
the desolate than the children of the married wife, saith the LORD.*

***Enlarge the place of thy tent, and let them stretch forth the curtains of thine habitations: spare not, lengthen thy cords, and strengthen thy stakes; For thou shalt break forth on the right hand and on the left; and thy seed shall inherit the Gentiles, and make the desolate cities to be inhabited. Fear not; for thou shalt not be ashamed: neither be thou confounded; for thou shalt not be put to shame: for thou shalt forget the shame of thy youth, and shalt not remember the reproach of thy widowhood any more. For thy Maker IS THINE HUSBAND; [watch how the Bible defines itself] THE LORD OF HOSTS IS HIS NAME...***

**Isaiah 54:1-5**

You do not have to wonder about it, you do not have to “interpret” anything; the Bible always interprets itself. Go back and look at verse 5 again:

***“For thy Maker is thine husband...”***

Who is he? Robert Redford? Rock Hudson? Carry Grant? Pope John Paul? Joseph Smith? No, He is better than all of them. They will all die, He is the one who never dies, “the LORD of hosts is his name.” But He is not only Israel's husband, He is “thy Redeemer.” He is also “the Holy One of Israel,” in case you did not get it before. If you have a seminary education, you might have to read it four or five times to get it all down and understand it. Once more just for good measure:

***For thy Maker is thine husband; the Lord of hosts is his name; and thy Redeemer the Holy One of Israel; The God of the whole earth shall he be called.***

**Isaiah 54:5**

That is Israel's husband: God the Father.

Now remember, the Lord Jesus Christ has a bride, the church, and God the Father has a wife, Israel. Once you understand this, some things will begin to make sense. Let's go back and quickly recap history, beginning in the book of Genesis. In the book of Genesis there was a man named Abraham.

Abraham was minding his own business when one day the Lord came down and said, “Abraham, come out here. I want to show you something.”

Abraham said, “Lord, what do you want to show me? Can it wait just a minute? I'm watching the ball game right now. The Super Bowl is on, Lord. I'll be out in a minute.”

## Chapter 12 - Key Words and Phrases

And the Lord said, “Come on out, turn that TV off.”

Abraham said, “It's almost half time, Lord, I'll be out then.”

So God just put a little interference on the network, and the thing went all haywire. Abraham said, “OK, Lord, I'm coming.”

Then God took Abraham out there, and showed him those stars. Scientists say you can see five thousand stars on a clear night with the naked eye - in the country, of course, not in the city anymore. But just in the instant Abraham looked up, God probably put 3-D eyeballs in him so he could take in about nineteen million stars at one time in panoramic view. Abraham looked at that and said, “Lord, this is better than channel nine anytime.”

And God said, “Abraham, some day your seed will be just like those stars.”

Abraham said, “Come on, Lord, don't kid me.”

And God said, “I'm serious, Abraham, do you believe that?”

Abraham said, “Well, if you said it, Lord, I'll believe it.”

God said, “OK Abraham, because you believe that, I will give you my righteousness.”

The Bible says in Genesis 15 Abraham believed God and it was counted unto him for righteousness.

So Abraham had a son named Isaac, and Isaac had a son named Jacob, and Jacob had some boys, twelve of them in all. One of the twelve, Joseph, was sold into slavery in Egypt. A few years later, the rest of the family went on a starvation diet; they were in a famine. So Jacob told his boys to go down to Egypt to see if they could get some corn.

Then you see how wonderfully the hand of God works. When you read the Old Testament, the principle of Romans 8:28 that all things work together for good to God's people just jumps right out of the book all over the place. God set the situation perfectly.

The ten brothers came in not knowing who Joseph was because they had not seen him for years. Joseph was grown now. He was not a lad of seventeen anymore, he had a beard and was sitting on Pharaoh's throne having a great time while his brothers were starving to death. They were the ones who sold him into slavery and they thought he was dead. But of course, he recognized them right away because he had the discernment which comes from a right relationship with God, but he didn't tell them who he was. They went back and forth from Canaan to Egypt and finally he showed himself to his brethren, and they all moved down to Egypt.



There ends the book of Genesis.

In Exodus 1, the Bible says there rose up a new king in Egypt who knew not Joseph, and he put the children of Israel under bondage. They were down there making bricks for Yul Brynner while Charlton Heston was trying to deliver them. That is what **Hellywood** (no, that's not a "typo"! ) showed you in the movie, "The Ten Commandments". I never saw the movie, I read the book. (Just kidding, I saw the movie.)

But I really don't care much for Hellywood's version of the Bible because they never get it right. In the movie, "The Ten Commandments", Yul Brynner lives and the movie ends with him in the palace. In the Bible, Pharaoh drowned trying to chase the children of Israel across the Red Sea. Hellywood always tries to dress up sin and wickedness and make it come out all right in the end.

Once you get into the Bible, the stories really come alive for you. You can actually see Moses out there on the desert with the burning bush, and you know God is talking to him. Can't you just imagine the awesomeness of the voice of God coming from a burning bush? With my luck, about that time Smokey the Bear would show up and try to put the fire out.

So God told Moses he would be the deliverer of Israel. Then Moses told Pharaoh to "Let my people go" and, of course, Pharaoh didn't want to, so they fought back and forth for a while. Finally God came down and killed all the firstborn of Egypt, and the children of Israel went out. But it was God who delivered Israel, merely using Moses as His instrument. God called out a chosen people unto Himself: the nation of Israel, God's wife.

Then we pick up the story through Exodus, Leviticus, Numbers and Deuteronomy, those boring books of the Bible where Ubagad begat Ubaget and all that stuff you think seems so dry. But what you are reading there is the history of the nation of Israel.

Pretty soon you get into Joshua, and Joshua cleaned clocks for awhile as he took them into the land. Then in Judges they began to get into a mess. In 1<sup>st</sup> and 2<sup>nd</sup> Samuel they were in a bigger mess. Then you get 1<sup>st</sup> and 2<sup>nd</sup> Kings where they were in even a bigger mess, and by the time you reach 1<sup>st</sup> and 2<sup>nd</sup> Chronicles, they were so messed up God said, "That's it; I'm going to wipe you out." So God sent Sennacherib and Nebuchadnezzar and put them into captivity. Why? God's wife committed adultery. She went after other gods. When you read through the Old Testament, you find the nation of Israel going after Ashtaroth, she goes after Dagon, after Molech, she worships the "Queen of Heaven", and many others which are all connected with the Old Testament pagan Baal worship.

## Chapter 12 - Key Words and Phrases

There is a place in 1 Samuel where He wiped out Israel because Israel went after other gods. The Philistines took the Ark of God into their little cage with their god, Dagon, and that is one of the funniest places in the Bible. It always did thrill my soul to read that passage.

Here comes the Ark of God in with Dagon the fish god, half fish and half man about thirty feet tall. The Philistines were rejoicing over the fact that they whipped the Jews and got the Ark of God when they put the Ark in with Dagon and closed the door. About that time it got real quiet in there. The dust began to settle when the Angel of the Lord just slipped in there quietly and walked around a little bit looking at that big stone god. About that time, sweat began to form on the top of his stone head, and the Angel of the Lord said, "What are you laughing at, buddy? Down!" And Dagon fell on his face.

The Philistines came in the next morning and said, "Oh! My god fell down! We have to help him up!"

But Dagon was saying, "Just let me alone! Just let me alone!" So they set him back up and shut the door, and in came the Angel of the Lord again and said, "DOWN!" And down he went. This time the Bible says God cut off his head and hands.

Don't tell me God doesn't have a sense of humor. (Just look in the mirror sometime.) Do you know what kind of a sense of humor God has? As punishment for taking the Ark, God smote the Philistines with hemorrhoids! Read 1 Samuel 5 - it's one of the funniest chapters in the Bible.

You can take almost any place in the Old Testament and see the depravity of the nation of Israel because they did not obey God. In the wilderness, they said, "Oh, we are starving to death! All we have is this old manna to eat, Moses. Why can't we have some meat?" So God brought down some quail, and those quail hunters had a ball with quail falling all over the place. They had all the meat their little hearts could want, but after about nine or ten weeks of it they had had enough. The Bible says they got so sick of it that it came out their nostrils, and they complained again. They were never satisfied.

That is the way we are, too. God would get them out of one jam, and they would praise Him and say, "Oh, God, thank you. You are the God of Israel", and two weeks later they would be worshipping false gods again. That is the same way Christians act. If you want to study your life and my life, study the nation of Israel.

Finally, God had enough, and He said, "OK, you have committed adultery. You have forsaken me and gone after other gods, so I will divorce you according to Mosaic Law.

God put her away, and was done with the nation of Israel temporarily, and turned his attention to the Gentiles to get a bride for His Son. So now He is calling out the body of Christ in the church age.

One of these days soon, the Day of Christ will take place, and that will be the day Jesus Christ gets His bride: the church. But God is not finished yet, because there is a problem. God is divorced. His wife has to be reinstated. So what does God do? He has a tribulation period. The tribulation period has one purpose, and that is to bring the nation of Israel back to Him the way she was in the Old Testament. During the tribulation period, God deals with the nation of Israel, He does NOT deal with the church. The church is gone to be married to His Son, the Lord Jesus Christ. Many so-called "Bible teachers" today try to teach that the church will go through the tribulation. Well, maybe you are, fellow, but I won't. I will have a front row seat up there with a pair of binoculars so I can watch the thing, but I will NOT be here.

So God deals with Israel in the tribulation to bring His wife back to where she needs to be. In the middle of the tribulation period, Israel begins to turn back to God and by the end of the tribulation, she is ready to be reinstated, and God comes down and takes out His wife. That is the Day of the Lord.

Once you get that division down, all the prophetic passages in the Bible begin to make sense.

The Day of Christ is NOT the same as the Day of the Lord. It won't work. God has a wife, the nation of Israel. God's wife, right now, has been put away. God will reinstate her under Mosaic law in the Millennium, and then everything will be complete. Christ will have His bride, the church, and God will have His wife, Israel. Then, as all good fairy tales end, they'll all live happily ever after.

Let's nail this thing down one more time with two Old Testament passages. In Ezekiel 23, verse 1:

***The word of the Lord came again unto me, saying,  
Son of man, there were two women, the daughters of one mother:  
And they committed whoredoms in Egypt; [Egypt is a type of the world in the Bible] they committed whoredoms in their youth: there were their breasts pressed, and there they bruised the teats of their virginity.  
And the names of them were Aholah the elder, and Aholibah her sister:  
and they were mine, and they bare sons and daughters. [Now watch this!]  
Thus were their names; SAMARIA is AHOLAH, and JERUSALEM  
AHOLIBAH.*** Ezekiel 23:1-4

## Chapter 12 - Key Words and Phrases

That verse clearly tells you that God is speaking of the two branches of the nation of Israel and how they went after other gods. Read the rest of **chapter 23** and it will describe this in detail. The confederate nation of Israel is likened unto two women who commit whoredoms against God. So God deals with them according to their whoredoms in going after other gods. Look at verses **30-34**:

***I will do these things unto thee, because thou hast gone a whoring after the heathen, and because thou art polluted with their idols.***

***Thou hast walked in the way of thy sister; therefore will I give her cup into thine hand.***

***Thus saith the Lord God; Thou shalt drink of thy sister's cup deep and large: thou shalt be laughed to scorn and had in derision; it containeth much.***

***Thou shalt be filled with drunkenness and sorrow, with the cup of astonishment and desolation, with the cup of thy sister Samaria.***

***Thou shalt even drink it and suck it out, and thou shalt break the sherds thereof, and pluck off thine own breasts: for I have spoken it, saith the Lord God.***

Now verse 35 tells why God deals with them this way:

***Therefore thus saith the Lord God; Because thou hast forgotten me, and cast me behind thy back, therefore bear thou also thy lewdness and thy whoredoms.***

Now, let's look at God dealing with Israel to bring her back to Him. This reference is found in **Jeremiah 31**, beginning at verses **37-32**:

***Behold, the days come, saith the Lord, that I will make a new covenant with the house Israel, and with the house of Judah:***

***Not according to the covenant that I made with their fathers in the day that I took them by the hand to bring them out of the land of Egypt; which my covenant they brake, although I was an husband unto them, saith the Lord.***

Israel broke the first vow they made in Joshua 1:16-18, and God put them away. But God makes a new covenant with them in the Millennium; look at Jeremiah 31:33-34:

***But this shall be the covenant that I will make with the house of Israel; After those days, saith the Lord, I will put my law in their inward parts, and write it in their hearts; and will be their God, and they shall be my***

*people.*

***And they shall teach no more every man his neighbour, and every man his brother, saying, Know the Lord: for they shall all know me, from the least of them unto the greatest of them, saith the Lord: for I will forgive their iniquity, and I will remember their sin no more.***

In my ministry, I counsel people all the time on all sorts of problems; but obviously the most common problem I deal with is marital problems. Occasionally, I will run into cases where one partner commits adultery. When that comes up, I always take them to the Old Testament and show them what Israel did to God, and how God forgave them, remembered their sins no more, and reinstated them. That is biblical counseling based on sound doctrine.

Of course, it doesn't work in every case because I deal with sinful men and women who do not have the perfect capacity of forgiveness God has. But the standard is clearly established in the Bible: forgive and reinstate when the guilty party repents.

That is just one example of what I have talked about in this book. The Bible has the answers to every situation and problem that can come up in life. No other book in existence can match it.

It should be easy to see now why there is a difference between the day of the Lord and the day of Christ. Each stands for a different event dealing with two different members of the trinity and their relationship with two different groups of people. The day of the Lord is when God the Father gets His wife, the nation of Israel, and the day of Christ is when Jesus Christ gets His bride, the church.

Now let's study some more key words and phrases. We will not go into as much detail with the following words. Once you understand the distinction between the "day of the Lord" and the "day of Christ", the rest are relatively simple.

Let's look at the key phrase: "**those days**". Now, who would think "those days" would mean anything? Watch. Consider **Matthew 24, verses 1-3**:

***And Jesus went out, and departed from the temple: and his disciples came to him for to shew him the buildings of the temple.***

***And Jesus said unto them, See ye not all these things? verily I say unto you, There shall not be left here one stone upon another, that shall not be thrown down.***

***And as he sat upon the mount of Olives, the disciples came unto him privately, saying, Tell us, when shall these things be? and what shall be the sign of thy coming, and of the end of the world?***

There is the context for the chapter. Remember, the first rule of Bible study is to

## Chapter 12 - Key Words and Phrases

ask yourself the basic question: Who is the passage addressed to, and what is the context? Jesus is talking to twelve Jewish disciples, NOT the church. Now you can apply the chapter to the church inspirationally, but don't get it out of its proper doctrinal context. He is talking to His disciples about the end of the world, and the sign of His coming. (Remember, the Jews require a sign, as stated in 1 Corinthians 1:22.) Keep that straight. If you do not keep it straight, this chapter can make you believe you can lose your salvation. One of the greatest verses in the Bible to make you think you can lose your salvation is Matthew 24:13, but remember, Matthew 24 is addressed to the Jews - not the church.

If I thought I could lose my salvation, I wouldn't give God twenty-five cents; I would throw my Bible in the trash can, throw my ordination papers away, walk out the door and never preach again. I don't want to preach anything that is not absolute. Salvation by grace through faith in the shed blood of the Lord Jesus Christ is ABSOLUTE. Why, if God can't keep me when I can't keep myself, what good is He? (I speak reverently.) What I need is a Saviour to save me from my sins. I need somebody who can take care of me when I can't take care of myself. If salvation was left up to me I would mess it up so quick I would not know what happened.

Look at verses 4-5:

***And Jesus answered and said unto them, Take heed that no man deceive you.***

***For many shall come in my name, saying, I am Christ; and shall deceive many.***

Remember that. Just because a guy says he is a preacher doesn't mean he is a good preacher. He might be preaching something that will send you to hell. I don't know where we got the idea that just because a guy smiles nice and carries a Bible he is on God's side. I'm very suspicious; I watch those guys. I don't trust slick people. You can spot them a mile away; they wear those silky shark skin suits, every hair is in place, and they have a TV commercial smile. If I could get away with it on Sunday morning, I would wear whatever was comfortable. I think you ought to look nice, but that doesn't always require a suit and tie. I watch those guys; how they slide up to the pulpit with a "Jesus loves you" grin that looks like they swallowed a banana sideways, and then "preach" a message with long, flowing, beautiful words that says nothing. Just like Romans 16 says, "by good words and fair speeches deceive the hearts of the simple." I like a guy who will just put it right across the plate to me. Don't give me any flim-flam; just preach to me like a man, I can take it.

People in America today are crazy. They get upset so easily at guys who preach, yet they will watch the late show, and somebody will come on and tell them they have bad breath or their underarms stink, and they won't get the least bit upset. But if they go somewhere and hear somebody preach and tell them what they need to do for their own soul, they get mad. I don't understand it.

Just because a guy gets up and says he is preaching the word of God doesn't mean he is; check him out. That includes me. Don't ever take anything I say and just run with it; check me out! Search the scriptures and find out if I am telling you the truth.

Now that is what I am talking about by an inspirational application from Matthew 24. The verse actually says many people in the tribulation will claim to be Christ Himself and deceive the multitudes, but it can apply to preachers in the twentieth century, also. Just be careful how far you take the illustrations and applications.

Now look at verses 6-7:

***And ye shall hear of wars and rumours of wars: see that ye be not troubled: for all these things must come to pass, but the end is not yet. For nation shall rise against nation, and kingdom against kingdom: and there shall be famines, and pestilences, and earthquakes, in divers places.***

Someone asked me one time, "Aren't you worried about the threat of war?"

I said, "No, they can blow this whole planet up tonight, it would be okay with me."

My house is in order. I'm ready to go home to be with Jesus any time. I'm just hanging around here waiting for something better to do; just trying my best to do what God wants me to until then. I don't have any long-range plans down here. I know this old world is not my home, I'm just passing through. My home is laid up there, somewhere beyond the blue. I'm just a pilgrim in a strange land.

***All these are the beginning of sorrows.***

***Then shall they deliver you up to be afflicted, and shall kill you: and ye shall be hated of all nations for my name's sake.***

***And then shall many be offended, and shall betray one another, and shall hate one another.***

***And many false prophets shall rise, and shall deceive many.***

***And because iniquity shall abound, the love of many shall wax cold.***

***But he that shall endure unto the end, the same shall be saved.***

**Matthew 24:8-13**

You better watch verse 13. God is not dealing with the church, God is dealing

## Chapter 12 - Key Words and Phrases

with the nation of Israel in the tribulation. You are saved by faith in Jesus Christ whether you “endure to the end” or not.

### ***And this gospel of the kingdom...***

Do you see that? Jesus didn't say the gospel of the grace of God, but “this gospel of the kingdom”. Those two gospels are not the same. How do you know they are different? Because kingdom is not spelled g-r-a-c-e. Easy. There is a difference between the gospel of the kingdom and the gospel of the grace of God that Paul preaches. Do you know the difference?

Back to verses 14-22:

***And this gospel of the kingdom shall be preached in all the world for a witness unto all nations; and then shall the end come.***

***When ye therefore shall see the abomination of desolation, spoken of by Daniel the prophet, stand in the holy place, (whoso readeth, let him understand:)***

***Then let them which be in Judaea flee into the mountains:***

***Let him which is on the housetop not come down to take any thing out of his house:***

***Neither let him which is in the field return back to take his clothes.***

***And woe unto them that are with child, and to them that give suck in THOSE DAYS!***

***But pray ye that your flight be not in the winter, neither on the sabbath day:***

***For then shall be great tribulation, such as was not since the beginning of the world to this time, no, nor ever shall be.***

***And except THOSE DAYS should be shortened, there should no flesh be saved: but for the elect's sake THOSE DAYS shall be shortened.***

The phrase “those days” is an expression God has reserved in scripture solely for the tribulation period. Jesus just told you in verse 21 that this deals with the “great tribulation”.

Look at verse 29:

### ***Immediately after the TRIBULATION of THOSE DAYS...***

One of the great things about the Bible is it's consistency, so let's trace this through the rest of the Bible. Stay in Matthew 24 for a minute, and look at verse 37:

***But AS the days of Noe were, so shall also the coming of the Son of man be.***

As you know from a previous chapter, that passage is a picture of the tribulation



period. In that chapter, I took considerable time to take you back through Genesis 6 and show you the connection. Let's look at it again, and I'll show you how the consistency of the Bible never fails. Look at **Genesis 6:1-4**:

*And it came to pass, when men began to multiply on the face of the earth, and daughters were born unto them,*

*That the sons of God saw the daughters of men that they were fair; and they took them wives of all which they chose.*

*And the Lord said, My spirit shall not always strive with man, for that he also is flesh: yet his days shall be an hundred and twenty years.*

*There were giants in the earth in **THOSE DAYS**....*

That is the first place “those days” appears in the Bible. (Remember the law of first mention?) Comparing that with Matthew 24 clearly shows again how the events of Genesis 6 are to be repeated in the tribulation period. History always repeats itself. Now let's look at the phrase “those days” in some other passages and see what we can learn.

*In **THOSE DAYS** there was no king in Israel, but every man did that which was right in his own eyes.*

#### **Judges 17:6**

That verse is the key to the whole book of Judges. The book of Judges details events in the tribulation about four or five times. Chapters 17 and 18 deal with the worldwide false religion which will be in full swing in the tribulation period. The phrase “THOSE DAYS” keeps popping up all through the book. Look at **Judges 18:1**:

*In **THOSE DAYS** there was no king in Israel: and in **THOSE DAYS** the tribe of the Danites sought them an inheritance to dwell in; for unto that day all their inheritance had not fallen unto them among the tribes of Israel.*

When you study the tribulation period, you find Dan and Ephraim are the two tribes left out of the inheritance when the 144,000 are chosen in Revelation 14, because those tribes went after Baal in the Old Testament. Dan and Ephraim are totally corrupt in the tribulation period, because they were totally corrupt in the Old Testament. History repeats itself.

Remember what we studied earlier about the three applications of scripture? Historically, in the book of Judges, the nation of Israel fell apart because they rejected God. Inspirationally, the book of Judges can apply to you and me. It shows what happens in your life when you forsake God. Doctrinally, the book of

## Chapter 12 - Key Words and Phrases

Judges deals with the tribulation period and how the nation of Israel pays the price because they are disobedient to God. It is a perfect picture of the world situation during the end times. There will be no “king” in Israel (or anywhere else, really) and everybody will do that which is right in his own eyes - situation ethics: if it feels good, do it. That is what we are seeing in the world today.

Let's look at another one in **Joel 3**, beginning at verse 7:

***For, behold, in THOSE DAYS, and in that time, when I shall bring again the captivity of Judah and Jerusalem...***

Immediately, I know the context of Joel 3. “Those days” tells me it is the tribulation period. In addition, I would know from Job 42:10, Ezekiel 39:25, and several other places in the Bible; when God turns the captivity of Jerusalem and Israel, that it is the end of the tribulation period. So I have two keys already that establish the context. This passage will deal with the end of the tribulation. Now verses 2-3:

***I will also gather all nations, and will bring them down into the valley of Jehoshaphat, and will plead with them there for my people and for my heritage Israel, whom they have scattered among the nations, and parted my land.***

***And they have cast lots for my people; and have given a boy for an harlot, and sold a girl for wine, that they might drink.***

That verse ties in perfectly with Matthew 25:31-46 which deals with the judgment of the nations at the end of the tribulation period. The Bible always interprets itself, scripture with scripture. Let's continue with the passage:

***Yea, and what have ye to do with me, O Tyre, and Zidon, and all the coasts of Palestine? will ye render me a recompense? and if ye recompense me, swiftly and speedily will I return your recompense upon your own head; Because ye have taken my silver and my gold, and have carried into your temples my goodly pleasant things:***

***The children also of Judah and the children of Jerusalem have ye sold unto the Grecians, that ye might remove them far from their border.***

***Behold, I will raise them out of the place whither ye have sold them, and will return your recompense upon your own head:***

***And I will sell your sons and your daughters into the hand of the children of Judah, and they shall sell them to the Sabeans, to a people far off: for the Lord hath spoken it.***

***Proclaim ye this among the Gentiles; Prepare war, wake up the mighty***

*men, let all the men of war draw near; let them come up:*

*Beat your plowshares into swords, and your pruninghooks into spears: let the weak say, I am strong.*

*Assemble yourselves, and come, all ye heathen, and gather yourselves together round about: thither cause thy mighty ones to come down, O Lord.*

*Let the heathen be wakened, and come up to the valley of Jehoshaphat: [The valley of Jehoshaphat is where the battle preceding the second coming of Christ will take place.] for there will I sit to judge all the heathen round about.*

*Put ye in the sickle, for the harvest is ripe: come, get you down; for the press is full, the fats overflow; for their wickedness is great.*

*Multitudes, multitudes in the valley of decision: for the **DAY OF THE LORD** [second coming, remember?] is near in the valley of decision.*

**Joel 3:4-14**

This passage says the second coming is NEAR, but not here just yet. So you have three keys telling you what the chapter deals with. Notice how simple those keys are:

- 1) **Those days**
- 2) **Bring again the captivity of Judah and Jerusalem**
- 3) **The day of the Lord is near**

Almost every word is one syllable; easy enough for a twelve year old child to understand, IF you simply BELIEVE what you read.

Now I don't understand every single detail of Joel chapter 3, but I know exactly what the context is; and by knowing where to start, I can sort out most of the details in time, and I can be sure not to mess up by trying to apply the verses where they don't belong. The whole chapter deals with the restoration of the nation of Israel and the judgment of the nations at the end of the tribulation period; and the way you know that is by those two little words in the first sentence: **THOSE DAYS**. It never fails.

Let's look at another passage in Joel 2. This one will straighten out some doctrine on the charismatic movement and speaking in tongues. Every Pentecostal I ever dealt with in my life on the charismatic gifts and speaking in tongues always used Joel 2 and Acts 2 to prove his doctrine. They believe the passage in Joel 2:28-32 is a prophecy concerning the church, but if you study Joel and simply believe what you read and let the Bible interpret itself, instead of trying to make a private interpretation to match what you want to believe, it becomes very clear what is

## Chapter 12 - Key Words and Phrases

taking place. Let's begin reading in verses 28-29:

***And it shall come to pass afterward, that I will pour out my spirit upon all flesh; and your sons and your daughters shall prophesy, your old men shall dream dreams, your young men shall see visions:***

***And also upon the servants and upon the handmaids in **THOSE DAYS** will I pour out my spirit.***

“Those days” places the passage in the tribulation. Look at verses 30-31:

***And I will shew wonders in the heavens and in the earth, blood, and fire, and pillars of smoke.***

***The sun shall be turned into darkness, and the moon into blood, before the great.. [Here it comes, don't miss it! Get your eyeballs glued on it!]....before the great and the terrible DAY OF THE LORD come.***

The passage deals with the second coming of Jesus Christ. It has nothing to do with the church. Notice “those days” (the tribulation) occurs BEFORE “the day of the Lord” (second coming) in verse 31. The Bible is not that difficult once you understand the importance of about twenty-five basic words and phrases which will always give you the doctrinal context.

Who would ever think that the infinite Almighty God of this universe would write such a book? Who would ever think He would take such basic simple words and phrases like “those days”, “the day of the Lord”, “the day of Jesus Christ”, “as”, “like”, and build a whole Bible around them? If God wanted to impress people, why wouldn't he have used some big flowery words like angelology, ecclesiology, and hermeneutics, all through the Bible that you had to figure out? No, God is dealing with dumbbells like us. I'm so thankful He wrote His book so I could understand it.

Let's look at one more. This is the one I always have fun with, because when most people read the New Testament, they don't pay any attention to it. But I learned long ago that every word in the Bible is important. When I find key words like “those days” and “the day of the Lord”, I pay particular attention because God is trying to show me something. In Matthew 3 there is a very simple little story, and most people don't think there is anything to it. Let's see for ourselves:

***In **THOSE DAYS** came John the Baptist, preaching in the wilderness of Judaea,***

***And saying, Repent ye: for the kingdom of heaven is at hand.***

***For this is he that was spoken of by the prophet Esaias [Isaiah], saying, The voice of one crying in the wilderness, Prepare ye the way of the Lord,***

*make his paths straight.*

*And the same John had his raiment of camel's hair, and a leathern girdle about his loins; and his meat was locusts and wild honey.*

*Then went out to him Jerusalem, and all Judea, and all the region round about Jordan, And were baptized of him in Jordan, confessing their sins.*

**Matthew 3:1-6**

John is preaching and baptizing in the wilderness as a forerunner to the first coming of Christ. But lo and behold, I find that key phrase “those days” in the very first verse. That immediately tells me this is a picture of something in the tribulation period. When I study a little bit further, I find in Revelation 11 two witnesses show up. Of course, they are a great controversy in the scripture among so-called “Bible scholars”, but there is no controversy if you just believe what the Bible says. They are Moses and Elijah. Moses and Elijah come back in Revelation 11 in the middle of the tribulation period. But when you try to connect the two witnesses with John the Baptist, something doesn't fit because John the Baptist doesn't appear in the book of Revelation. However, there are about four or five places in the gospels where the Bible says John the Baptist came in the spirit of Elijah. Then in Matthew 11:7-15 Jesus Christ Himself says John the Baptist is a type of Elijah, and He nails it down even better in Matthew 17:10-13. (Read those passages for yourself to find out what I am saying.)

Now, when we read “in THOSE DAYS came John the Baptist, preaching in the wilderness of Judaea...”, it becomes very clear and plain that Matthew 3 is a beautiful picture of future events. Remember, history repeats itself. It is clear to see how the first coming and the second coming are very similar. In fact, they are alike in so many aspects they are almost identical. About the only major difference between them is what Jesus Christ comes for. The first time, He came to die for our sins; the second time, He comes back as King. Otherwise, watch the similarities:

- 1) In the gospels, Matthew, Mark, Luke and John, there are four separate accounts of His first coming. In the book of Revelation there are four distinct accounts of the second coming of Christ.
- 2) When Christ came the first time, Israel was captive, serving a foreign power. At the second coming, Israel will be captive, serving a foreign power.
- 3) When Christ came the first time, Rome was in power. When Christ comes the second time, Rome will be the foreign power holding the Jews captive.
- 4) When Christ came the first time, the Jews were in their homeland. In 1948 the Jews went back to their homeland, and they will be there when Christ returns.

## Chapter 12 - Key Words and Phrases

- 5) When Christ came the first time, the nation of Israel was in apostasy; at the second coming, the same will be true.
- 6) When Christ came the first time, John the Baptist was a forerunner. Before the second coming, Elijah is the forerunner, and we have already seen the connection between John the Baptist and Elijah.
- 7) When Christ came the first time, there was one universal language: Greek. When Christ comes the second time, there will be one universal language: English.
- 8) When Christ came the first time, there was a one world military dictatorship in power under the iron heel of Rome. Right now, as you read this, the leaders of this world are investing their lives in building a one world government which will eventually be a Roman military dictatorship.
- 9) When Christ came the first time, the educated religious people of His day rejected Him while the common ordinary man accepted Him. How true that is even today.
- 10) Finally, the first time Christ came, He came to His family, Mary and Joseph, privately in a stable, and later in His ministry He revealed Himself to all of Israel and to the world. The second time He will come first to His family, privately at the rapture for the church. Then, at a later point in time, at the end of the tribulation He will appear to the whole world.

History repeats itself. That whole thing unfolded because of two simple words: THOSE DAYS.

Let's move on now, and look at another key word: **CLOUD**. (I wish I could be more profound, but God put the Bible together this way.) Clouds are a very important key to understanding the Bible. Who ever told you to take clouds for granted? Once you understand Romans 1, which says the invisible things are clearly understood by the things which were made, clouds become very important. Why? Because God made them for a reason: to give you light and understanding in spiritual matters. Look at **Acts 1:9:-11**:

*And when he had spoken these things, while they beheld, he was taken up; and a CLOUD received him out of their sight.*

*And while they looked stedfastly toward heaven as he went up, behold, two men stood by them in white apparel;*

*Which also said, Ye men of Galilee, why stand ye gazing up into heaven? this same Jesus, which is taken up from you into heaven, shall so come in LIKE manner AS ye have seen him go into heaven.*

Remember AS and LIKE? When ever you see them, stop and look at the passage, because God is trying to show you something. The Bible says he went up in a

cloud, and he will come back LIKE he went up. That tells me clouds in the Bible must mean something.

They do. In the Bible, clouds will always be connected with the second coming of the Lord Jesus Christ. Look at **Revelation 1:7**:

***Behold, he cometh with CLOUDS...***

There it is: clouds connected with the second coming of Christ. Let's see it again in **Mark 14:62**:

***And Jesus said, I am: and ye shall see the Son of man sitting on the right hand of power, and coming in the CLOUDS of heaven.***

There it is again; clouds connected with Jesus Christ coming back to this earth.

Now let's go back to the Old Testament book of Zephaniah and look at clouds connected with the second coming, and see what God can show us. That's a real acid-test, trying to find the book of Zephaniah. It shows how much time Christians spend in the front of their TV instead of in front of their Bible. Sometimes when I am out preaching somewhere I like to use references from Zephaniah or Obadiah or one of those minor prophets just to see how long it takes for people to find the book.

I imagine all kinds of strange things. I can just see some Christian being caught up to heaven at the rapture, after being saved for thirty years, and never reading the Bible through once, and never even knowing that there was a book in it named Zephaniah. (Don't kid yourself; there are thousands upon thousands of Christians in America in that kind of spiritual condition.)

Just about the time he gets there, I can see Zephaniah coming up to him and saying, "Hey, Joe, it's good to see you! Bless God, praise the Lord, you're finally home now! By the way, I'm Zephaniah. How did you like my book? Did you like that outline I stuck in there in chapter two, wasn't that just great? Did you catch the second coming of Christ over there in chapter one?"

About that time old Joe turns green and tries to be excused from the room. It's a funny scene, isn't it? You had better laugh now, because you won't laugh at the judgment seat of Christ if that is your spiritual condition.

Now look at **Zephaniah 1:14-15**:

***The great DAY OF THE LORD [context: second coming] is near, it is near, and hasteth greatly, even the voice of the DAY OF THE LORD [there it is again, Just in case you missed it the first time]: the mighty man shall cry there bitterly.***

***THAT DAY*** [one more time for the Bible scholars] *is a day of wrath, a day of trouble and distress, a day of wasteness and desolation, a day of darkness and gloominess, a day of CLOUDS and thick darkness.*

Notice the clouds connected with the second coming of Jesus Christ.

By the way, Zephaniah just gave you EIGHT other key words in that verse all connected with the second coming. I won't take the time to run through any of those in this book, but I will let you do it on your own as your "homework" assignment. Let's look at another one in **Psalm 68** (that's a book anyone can find). Look at verse **32**:

***Sing unto God, ye kingdoms of the earth; O sing praises unto the Lord; Selah.***

Let me digress for a moment while we are here and I will give you another key word: **SELAH**. That's a musical expression meaning to pause or to rest. You will find "selah" distributed all the way through the book of Psalms, and anytime you find it, the context will always be the Millennium, because the Millennium is a rest. Now look at verses 33-34:

***To him that rideth upon the heavens of heavens, which were of old; to, he doth send out his voice, and that a mighty voice.***  
***Ascribe ye strength unto God: his excellency is over Israel, and his strength is in the CLOUDS.***

That will fix the doctrinal prophetic context of Psalm 68 for you as the second coming of Christ lapping over into the Millennium. Do you see how easy it is to establish the general context of a certain passage? All you need are the keys! Let's look at another key word: **BRIGHTNESS**. The word "brightness" is always associated with the second coming of Christ. Have you noticed how so many of these key words refer to the second coming of Christ? I went into detail in a previous chapter in explaining the theme of the Bible for a reason: so you could understand the overview. Now as we get into more specific subjects, the truth of what I told you earlier becomes more evident.

Now please don't misunderstand me, I thank God I am saved. The day I trusted the Lord Jesus Christ as my personal saviour is the most precious day of my life. When I think of the day Jesus came down and died for me on the cross, and shed His blood and took all the abuse and ridicule I was supposed to take, I get choked up almost to tears. Maybe it doesn't mean that much to you, but it means a lot to me. However, that is not the day God is interested in. The greatest day on God's calendar is NOT the day His Son was stripped and murdered for sinful men. God's



greatest day is found all the way through the Bible commonly called the Day of the Lord. That is the day when Jesus Christ sits down in Jerusalem and is crowned King of Kings and Lord of Lords, and finally gets exactly what he deserves: the praise of all men and the pre-eminence in ALL things. The second coming of Jesus Christ is the theme of the Bible.

Now let's get back to the word "brightness". Look at **Matthew 17:1-5**:

*And after six days Jesus taketh Peter, James, and John his brother, and bringeth them up into a high mountain apart,*

*And was transfigured before them: and his face did shine AS the sun, and his raiment was white AS the light.*

*And, behold, there appeared unto them Moses and Elias talking with him.*

*Then answered Peter, and said unto Jesus, Lord, it is good for us to be here: if thou wilt, let us make here three tabernacles; one for thee, and one for Moses, and one for Elias.*

*While he yet spake, behold, a BRIGHT cloud overshadowed them: and behold a voice out of the cloud, which said, This is my beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased; hear ye him.*

This is the famous "mount of transfiguration" chapter, where Moses and Elijah appear with the Lord Jesus Christ. We have already gone into detail with the appearing of Moses and Elijah in the tribulation and how they precede the second coming. Notice in verse 5 how the word CLOUD appears, and how the voice of God comes down from the heavens and gives the pre-eminence to His Son, the Lord Jesus Christ. This puts the passage in the tribulation lapping over into the second coming, doctrinally. But this cloud is a BRIGHT cloud. Now look at 2Thessalonians 2:8:

*And then shall that Wicked be revealed, whom the Lord shall consume with the spirit of his mouth, and shall destroy with the BRIGHTNESS OF HIS COMING.*

Notice how the word "brightness" is associated with the Lord's coming. This is a very important key in the Old Testament, because it helps straighten out one of the more "controversial" chapters in the Bible, Ezekiel 1. Notice how many so-called "controversial" passages in the Bible are so easy to understand when you get the keys.

Now let me talk to you about Ezekiel 1. It's probably one of the most "disastrous" chapters in the word of God for weirdos. Everybody who wants to prove flying saucers goes to Ezekiel 1. I don't know how many people have asked me through

## Chapter 12 - Key Words and Phrases

the years if I had ever figured out Ezekiel 1. There's nothing to figure out; Ezekiel 1 is one of the easiest places in the Bible. Ezekiel talks about some kind of machine that flies. It's a wheel within a wheel with creatures around it.

I had one guy who was a Baptist, (well, half Baptist - he was more of a jerk than anything else), try to tell me Ezekiel 1 was life coming down from other planets, and Ezekiel's flying machine was actually a flying saucer bringing life from other planets. He said those four creatures were outer space creatures, and they picture life in outer space coming down.

Well, there's life in outer space, no question about it, but it's not the kind of life you commonly think about. You don't want to find out first hand about the kind of life that is up there, but the people in the tribulation will find out about it. That's not what is taking place in Ezekiel 1.

Now let's just begin reading the chapter. By now we have come far enough along that you should be able to pick up the context with no problem. We will not have to refer to Joe Schmoe's book on the wheel within the wheel in Ezekiel; all we need to do is read what God said and pay attention to the little itty-bitty simple words God uses. Now let's pick up the story in chapter 1 verse 1:

***Now it came to pass in the thirtieth year, in the fourth month, in the fifth day of the month, as I was among the captives by the river of Chebar, that the heavens were opened, and I saw visions of God.***

Notice Ezekiel says the heavens (plural; all three of them) were opened and he saw visions of God. This has absolutely nothing to do with outer space creatures. Ezekiel's vision was THROUGH outer space directly into the third heaven, and he saw visions of God. Let's keep reading to find out what those visions were:

***In the fifth day of the month, which was the fifth year of king Jehoiachin's captivity,***

***The word of the Lord came expressly unto Ezekiel the priest, the son of Buzi, in the land of the Chaldeans by the river Chebar; and the hand of the Lord was there upon him.***

***And I looked, and, behold, a WHIRLWIND came out of the north, a great CLOUD, and a FIRE infolding itself, and a BRIGHTNESS was about it, and out of the midst thereof as the colour of amber, out of the midst of the fire.***

**Ezekiel 1:2-4**

I capitalized four words in that verse as key words on the second coming of Jesus Christ:

**WHIRLWIND:** Some other references are: **Isaiah 66:15, Jeremiah 4:13, Hosea 8:7, Amos 1:14, and Jeremiah 25:32.** If you will look up these verses, you will plainly see a “whirlwind” connected with the second coming.

**CLOUD:** We studied this key word previously.

**FIRE:** Now, not every time this word appears is it a direct prophetic reference to the second coming. The Bible also talks about the fire of hell, and James described the tongues of man as “a fire” in James 3:6, just to mention a couple of other uses of the word. But in literally dozens of places, the word “fire” prophetically points to the second coming of Jesus Christ. A few examples are: **2Thessalonians 1:8, Isaiah 9:5, Jeremiah 4:4, Isaiah 66:15, Revelation 19:12, and Matthew 3:11-12.**

**BRIGHTNESS:** We are now studying this key word.

Now this is the very first verse of Ezekiel's description of his vision. It establishes clearly the context of the chapter as a description of events surrounding the second coming of Jesus Christ. Now, I don't have every detail of Ezekiel 1 worked out, and probably never will. But there is no way I can get messed up believing it is flying saucers because I pay attention to the plain simple words God uses to show me the truth. I take seriously the verse that says “every word of God is pure”. It will save you a lot of grief if you will do the same.

Let's look at another key word: **IRON.** In Daniel 2, Nebuchadnezzar had a dream, and sees an image. In Daniel's description of this image in verses 31-35, he says the legs of the image were made of iron, and the feet were of iron mixed with clay. So what? Who cares? Isn't the Bible a boring book if that is all there is to it? The reason people get so put out with God and His book is because they have absolutely no idea how simple one syllable common everyday words can reveal such great and marvelous truths. Of course, the other extreme is for “theologians” to waste their entire lives arguing about these matters and spiritualizing everything they read to come up with their own private interpretations of the Bible, which have absolutely nothing to do with what the word of God says. So let's look to the Bible and see what iron in the word of God is. The first mention of iron (remember that rule?) is in **Genesis 4:22:**

***And Zillah, she also bare Tubal-cain, an instructor of every artificer in brass and iron: and the sister of Tubal-cain was Naamah.***

That seems like a meaningless verse until you realize Tubal-cain was a direct descendant of Cain. The Bible says of Cain that he was “of that wicked one”, and it says of the Devil that he was “a murderer from the beginning”. Cain and the

## Chapter 12 - Key Words and Phrases

Devil must be pretty closely related, and IRON first appears in Cain's line.

Judges 1 describes the events just after the death of Joshua, and the attempts by the children of Israel to carry on his work in driving out the inhabitants of the land.

**Judges 1:18-19** says:

***Also Judah took Gaza with the coast thereof, and Askelon with the coast thereof, and Ekron with the coast thereof.***

***And the Lord was with Judah; and he drave out the inhabitants of the mountain; but could not drive out the inhabitants of the valley, because they had chariots of IRON.***

I wonder what was so tough about those chariots of iron? There is nothing special about iron as metal. There are plenty of other metals which are lighter and stronger, such as aluminum and magnesium, and all the “space age” metals used today. Why iron? If every word of God is pure, then there is a specific reason why iron is significant, and that reason is much more important than just a reference to a particular metal used to build a chariot.

In verse 18, it mentions the cities of Gaza, Askelon, and Ekron as being connected with the chariots of iron. Those are cities of the Philistines mentioned in 1Samuel 6:17. Do you know any famous Philistine? Try Goliath. In 1Samuel 17:7, it says Goliath's spear's head weighed six hundred shekels of IRON. Iron is always connected with the Anti-Christ: specifically, the giants produced through the mingling of human seed with angelic seed as described in Genesis 6.

Look at **Deuteronomy 3:11**:

***For only Og king of Bashan remained of the remnant of giants; behold, his bedstead was a bedstead of iron; is it not in Rabbath of the children of Ammon? nine cubits was the length thereof, and four cubits the breadth of it, after the cubit of a man.***

Isn't the Bible a strange book? Why would God interrupt the narrative and go into such great detail to describe the dimensions and construction of a bed? Who cares? Imagine the God of the universe picking out some obscure detail such as this about a man who lived over three thousand years ago and recording it for all of history and eternity for you and me to read about in twentieth century America, and then saying that EVERY WORD of this book is pure! Either there is something tremendously important about this, or the Bible is just a joke. But notice; it says “only Og king of Bashan remained of the remnant of the GIANTS”. Iron is always associated with the giants. In Job 40, when the Lord is revealing the Devil to Job, He says “his bones are like bars of IRON”. There is something about

iron in the word of God.

Also, “**CLAY**” in the Bible is used to represent human flesh. In Job 33:6, Elihu says to Job, “I also am formed out of the clay.” In Psalm 40:2, David says the Lord brought him up out of the miry clay and set his feet upon a rock. This is true of every saved person. The Lord lifted me out of the rest of humanity and set me upon the rock, the Lord Jesus Christ, when I got saved.

With those two keys in mind, let's go back to Daniel 2 and tie this all together.

Daniel describes the image to Nebuchadnezzar as having toes which were part of iron and part of clay. Then he very clearly and carefully defines that right in the passage in verses 41-43. Notice what he says in verse 43:

***And whereas thou sawest iron mixed with miry clay, THEY...[Who are “they”? It has to be the “iron men”. Keep reading.]...they shall mingle themselves with the seed of men...***

Just exactly as it happened in Genesis 6. We have seen before how the events of Genesis 5-7 are to be repeated in the tribulation, and here God reveals that truth again through two little insignificant one syllable words any idiot can read: iron and clay.

Hopefully by now, you can see why it is so terribly important to not change the clear words of God to try to “update” the Bible.

Now we need to go one step further. Not only do specific words denote specific things in the Bible, but even the arrangement of those words is important. For example, in the New Testament, the Lord Jesus Christ is sometimes referred to as “**Jesus Christ**”, and other times as “**Christ Jesus**”. Who would ever think there was any significance to this difference? Certainly not the “masters” of theology. Ninety-nine percent of all the religious leaders in the world would think I was crazy for even mentioning this, but forget the theologians and stick to the word of God.

Jesus is the earthly name given to the Son of God. Christ is His heavenly title, meaning “anointed”.

Whenever His name appears as “Jesus Christ”, it describes His operation and function as the earthly man (Jesus) who bled and died for your sins, and then rose from the dead and ascended into heaven (Christ).

When His name appears as “Christ Jesus”, it describes His operation and function as the risen Saviour seated at the right hand of God (Christ) performing His priestly office, interceding for the saints before the throne of God, then bringing that function to earth (Jesus) to manifest it in the lives of saved people.

## Chapter 12 - Key Words and Phrases

There is a difference in those two functions!

Let's look to the word of God to substantiate what I am saying. Look at **1Corinthians 1:1-2:**

***Paul, called to be an apostle of JESUS CHRIST through the will of God, and Sosthenes our brother,***

***Unto the church of God which is at Corinth, to them that are sanctified in CHRIST JESUS, called to be saints, with all that in every place call upon the name of JESUS CHRIST our Lord, both theirs and ours.***

This verse says we are sanctified in Christ Jesus. That sanctification or “setting apart” from the world takes place IN CHRIST, as we allow the Lord Jesus Christ to live His life through us in the power of the Holy Spirit through the resurrection.

But notice later in verse 2, Paul addresses all saved people as those who “call upon the name of Jesus Christ our Lord”. In order to be saved, you come by the cross, through the work of the human man Jesus.

That is just one example of literally dozens. The next time you read the New Testament, just pay attention to this difference. Each time you see the name of Jesus Christ or Christ Jesus, pause and read the verse again to see what truth you can glean from understanding this difference. You will be totally amazed at what you can learn from this. Also, when the words “**Holy Spirit**” appear, it is a reference to the third person of the trinity and His work as the third member of the Godhead. When it appears as “**Holy Ghost**”, it is a reference to the indwelling Spirit of God which is in saved people.

***Now we have received, not the spirit of the world, but the spirit which is of God; that we might know the things that are freely given to us of God.***

***Which things also we speak, not in the words which man's wisdom teacheth, but which the HOLY GHOST teacheth; comparing spiritual things with spiritual.***

### **1Corinthians 2:12-13**

Verse 12 talks about the spirit which is received by saved people at the time of salvation, and in verse 13 it says we are taught the things of God by this indwelling spirit called the HOLY GHOST. Unsaved people have no access to the great truths of God until they come to Jesus Christ for salvation. That is the whole subject of this passage in 1Corinthians 2. Proverbs 9:10 says, “The fear of the Lord is the BEGINNING of wisdom...” Proverbs 21:30 says, “There is no wisdom nor understanding nor counsel against the Lord.” I went into detail at the very beginning of this book to show you that a man can learn nothing without a

## Chapter 12 - Key Words and Phrases

right relationship with God. That relationship is developed through a responsive attitude toward the indwelling spirit placed within you at the time of salvation. In the Bible, that indwelling spirit is referred to as the Holy Ghost.

Do you see how important it is not to change the simple words of God?

When Bible “revisers” change Holy Ghost to Holy Spirit, or Christ Jesus to Jesus Christ, they don't clarify the word of God or “update it to make it easier for modern men to understand”. Instead they destroy the revelation of God and cover up the truth. I'm not questioning their character; many of them are sincere, but they are sincerely deceived. Always remember: **“EVERY WORD OF GOD IS PURE!”**

Obviously, these are only a few of the key words and phrases found in the word of God. I would have to write this book in volumes to give them all to you in detail. At the end of this book in Appendix E, I have listed some of the major key words and phrases I have found in my brief studies. If you will take these to heart and understand how the simple, plain, individual words of God can bring to light so much truth, it will change your life forever.

## Chapter 12 - Key Words and Phrases



# Chapter 13

## Numerology

*Here is wisdom. Let him that hath understanding count the number of the beast: for it is the number of a man; and his number is Six hundred threescore and six.*

**Revelation 13:18**

There is a number system in the Bible which, if anyone could ever figure it out completely, would give them any truth they could want. Of course, no one has it mastered, and no one ever will; the Bible is an infinite book and we are finite. So, in this chapter, I will give you the basic general biblical number system as far as I have it.

Numbers are prevalent everywhere. If I am at church and want to talk to my wife at home, I go through a series of seven numbers. If you want to find our church, you look for a number on a street. If you want to mail a letter, you use 5 numbers at the end of the address to route it properly. You have a telephone number, a street number, a zip code number, an area code number, a bank account number, a charge card number, a social security number, a driver's license number, a license plate number, a work badge number, an automobile serial number, etc., etc., etc. Americans are number crazy. A friend of mine recently sat through an entire football game on TV and, as best he could, counted how many numbers were paraded across the eyes and ears of a fan during the average game. He counted over 20,000 different numbers including jersey numbers, downs and yardage, scores and statistics, just to name a few. Professional sports are probably the worst when it comes to numbers. There are so many statistics they can drive you nuts. I expect eventually they will have statistics such as how many hits a certain batter has on Thursday afternoons against left-handed pitchers during the third inning

## Chapter 13 - Numerology

with runners on base while his team is behind in the month of August when the opposing team wears blue uniforms and the game is being played on the road on artificial surface while it is raining and less than 80°. They have gone completely overboard.

But it only proves that numbers must be important, or people would not fool with them so much. Numbers in the Bible are extremely important, and I hope to give you some insight into that in this chapter.

What we will be discussing in this chapter can be pretty dangerous if you are not careful. Bible numerology is something most people have no concept of, but once you begin to at least grasp the basics of numerology, you will see some things you never saw before.

But you must be careful because when you start getting into numbers in the Bible, it can get into sensationalism. It can get you caught up in things which really do not help you in your everyday life, but yet, if you approach numerology right and deal with it in a proper biblical sense, it will add light to the word of God.

When Albert Einstein was near death, Billy Graham had an opportunity to try to lead him to the Lord. After an extensive witness, Einstein camped on his reason for rejecting God, and said to Billy, "I cannot believe in a God that is not a mathematical formula."

As far as we know, Einstein went into eternity without Christ and went to Hell. But Einstein had no concept of how close he came to stating what God is. When I say that, I don't want you to think that God is just a mathematical formula. What I am trying to say is this: the universe and everything in it is patterned after the only perfect being in existence, the Godhead, and it breaks down into the clearest most consistent number system imaginable.

A man said one time that music is the universal language, and it is. Benny Goodman went to Russia in the fifties and played "In The Mood", and even though the Russian language is not the same as the American language, and no one there understood the words, they still got the same message. Music conveys a message in any language and goes beyond the language barrier. It is a fixed constant in this world. When you listen to some of the classical music greats from the 15th and 16th century, you will find these men have portrayed pictures by their music without any words. A piece like "The Tales of the Vienna Woods" will paint a picture for you of someone in the woods just walking along like a lone hunter. Music is a fixed universal language.

Another example is the color red. The color red means basically the same thing to you as it does to an African...as it does to a Russian...as it does to a Chinese. The

color red is a fixed symbol just like music is a universal language; and in the same way, numbers are a fixed constant in God's word. There is a set pattern in the word of God which fixes and defines what certain numbers represent, and in this chapter, I will detail that pattern as far as I can define it in my own understanding.

Now please, let me caution you one more time before we get started on this subject, don't get carried away with numerology. There is a certain danger in Bible numerology in that it can go right off the deep end. There are some books on the market on Bible numerology, but I wouldn't recommend that you read most of them for any spiritual value. Instead, you might read them to see what happens to a man when he goes off the deep end in numbers. One of them is **Numbers in Scripture** by Bullinger. Bullinger is a classic example of someone going off the wall completely when it comes to numbers. He has numbers meaning so many different things that pretty soon there is no Biblical basis to it at all.

Most authors make Bible numerology so sensationalized they lose the truth of what God is trying to show them. I make a little mental Bible law in my own mind to guard against this - **I never take the Bible any place it doesn't take me.** I never go one inch beyond where the word of God stops, and that is especially true of numerology. That way I can avoid getting outside the confines of the word of God. Numbers will help you in the Bible as long as you always keep in mind the consistency of scripture. With that fact always before you, numerology will help you develop some patterns in the word of God which will shed additional light on your studies.

With that caution, let's get into the numbers in the Bible and see what they represent.

## ONE

The number **ONE** as it is found in the Bible represents **unity**. It stands for a oneness and a togetherness. The word unity and all its related counterparts (union, united, etc.) come from the word one.

As we study numbers, we will concentrate heavily on the rule of Bible study called the law of first mention. Usually (but not always), the key to understanding numbers in the Bible is understanding the first time they appear in the word of God. The first time the number ONE appears in the Bible is in **Genesis 1:9**:

***And God said, Let the waters under the heaven be gathered together unto ONE place, and let the dry land appear: and it was so.***

## Chapter 13 - Numerology

As you find it there, the word one has to do with unity and singleness. The verse talks about all of the waters being gathered into one place together in a single entity.

Now let's go a little further and look at Genesis 11. Notice the consistency - chapter 11: two **ONES**. In Genesis 11 you find the story of the tower of Babel. Notice what it says in verse **ONE**:

***And the whole earth was of ONE language, and of ONE speech.***

The first time ONE appears, it stands for a singleness and a oneness and a unity where God gathers the waters together. The next time ONE plays a predominant role, it is in a Gentile kingdom in chapter 11 (two ONES) where the people are of ONE language and ONE speech.

Now if I am paying attention, I can see that Genesis 11 is a picture of something in the future. In Genesis 11 the people got together into a united one world set-up. Right now as you read this, religious and political leaders are trying to get the people of the world to unite into a one world system through the **United** Fund, the **United** Way, **UNICEF**, the **United** Nations, the **United** Council of Churches, the **World** Council of Churches, Hands Across America, and hundreds of similar programs and organizations. But the Bible has already shown us before we go twelve chapters into the first book that unity and oneness in the world is of the devil. That is why you can trace his false kingdom all the way through the Bible and see how the Antichrist is going to put the thing together. That is why anyone who just believes the Bible won't get fooled by it for ten seconds.

That is the predominant spirit behind the devil's move to take over the world: unity and togetherness. Any movement, program, or organization which is involved in a world unity cause is being led by the devil. I guess the saddest part of this is the number of Christians in America who get fooled by this movement into thinking that world unity is "Christian". It only proves that American Christianity has dumped the word of God for a religious, political Sunday School program. I expect things like that from unsaved people, but to see it in God's people makes me weep.

I'm not going to spend a lot of time on the number ONE. It should be clear that it represents **unity**.

# TWO

**TWO** in the Bible stands for **division**. **Amos 3:3** says:  
***Can TWO walk together, except they be agreed?***

If you are not in agreement with someone, you are divided. Let's look at the first time TWO shows up in the Bible.

***And God made TWO great lights; the greater light to rule the day, and the lesser light to rule the night: he made the stars also.***

**Genesis 1:16**

It says God made two great lights, and those two great lights divided something. He made one for the day and one for the night, and divided night from day by the two objects He made. The first time the number TWO appears in the Bible, it divides something. In the Bible there are 66 books, but there is a great division in there which makes TWO - the Old Testament and the New Testament. When you come a little farther in Genesis, you find Adam gets divided into TWO. If that sounds strange, it is because you never paid attention to the words in the Bible. Look at Genesis 2 (did you catch that? **chapter 2**) and see what happens.

***And the Lord God said, It is not good that the man should be alone; I will make him an help meet for him.***

***And out of the ground the Lord God formed every beast of the field, and every fowl of the air; and brought them unto Adam to see what he would call them: and whatsoever Adam called every living creature, that was the name thereof.***

***And Adam gave names to all cattle, and to the fowl of the air, and to every beast of the field; but for Adam there was not found an help meet for him.***

**Genesis 2:18-20**

The Bible says God made the animals from the ground, but look where Eve comes from.

***And the Lord God caused a deep sleep to fall upon Adam, and he slept: and he took one of his ribs, and closed up the flesh instead thereof;***

***And the rib, which the Lord God had taken from man, made he a woman, and brought her unto the man.***

**Genesis 2:21-22**

God opened Adam's flesh and made him TWO. He took out one of his ribs and made a woman. Notice, they are both man. The word "woman" is a contraction of the English "womb-man", a man with a womb. There is no doubt about it, the woman comes from the man. Adam was divided, he was reproduced into TWO. If you doubt that, look at **Genesis 5:1-2**:

***This is the book of the generations of Adam. In the day that God created***

***man, in the likeness of God made he him;  
Male and female created he them; and blessed them, and called their  
name Adam, in the day when they were created.***

Notice in verse 2 he calls them MALE and FE-MALE. The female came out of the male. Notice further, He called their name Adam. They were both called Adam. When Adam looked at that woman, he said, "You are bone of my bone and flesh of my flesh." Adam was divided. God took a rib out of his side and fashioned a womb-man, a fe-male, out of his side.

Now let's look at some more TWOS very briefly just so you can get the picture. In the Old Testament, the nation of Israel was divided into two nations, Judah and Israel. In Zechariah 14, when the Lord Jesus Christ comes back and His feet touch the mount of Olives, it divides into two. When a man has a mental problem, the psychiatrists call him a schizo...his problem is that he has TWO personalities, he is divided. In Genesis 19, TWO angels went into Sodom to get Lot out of the city, and when they did, they separated him from his family.

Now, all those things have tremendous typical significance. I don't know what they stand for specifically in every case, but I know God has them in there for a reason. The number ONE shows me the Antichrist system is going to be a united system. The number TWO shows me that the Lord Jesus Christ will divide. Matthew 10:34-36, John 9:16, and several other passages say He came to divide. How can two walk together except they be agreed?

When you don't agree with someone, you are a divider, and it is clear that the Lord Jesus Christ did not agree with the world system and it did not agree with Him.

So whenever you find the number **TWO** in scripture, it will stand for **division and separation**.

## THREE

**THREE** is the greatest number in the Bible outside of seven. If a man really understands the significance of the number three, he can understand more Biblical truth than most Bible college graduates ever could. Some numbers in the Bible are not too clear, but some are so definitively clear they are absolute. **THREE** in the Bible is clear. **THREE** represents the **structure of the universe**. Everything in the physical creation is a manifestation of God because everything in the universe can be broken down into **THREE** basic components.

Now, I don't want to say this wrong, but God is an egotist. Of course, people immediately think there is something wrong with that because they think of human

egotism which is a disease that makes everyone sick except the person who has it. We are sinful fallen creatures and our pride and egotism is sin. But when you are God, you can be an egotist. He deserves to have one. When you can do what God does, you can have an ego too.

God patterned the universe after Himself. He probably thought to Himself, "If I am going to make a perfect universe, I should model it after something perfect. I wonder what I can find that is perfect. Well, I guess it will have to be me. I am the most perfect thing in existence."

So God fashioned everything in this universe after Himself, in a structure of THREES. THREE is the basic structure of the universe because God is a trinity - Father, Son and Holy Spirit. A man has a body, a soul and a spirit. Time is past, present and future. You must have all three. If you have no past, you couldn't be where you are. If you have no future, you aren't going anywhere, and if you have no present, you're dead. Space has height, width and depth. Einstein and the other loonies have beat their heads against the wall for years trying to find the 4th dimension; they are wasting their time, there are only three. I can be sure of that because I have a Bible, and that Bible says so clearly the universe is made up of things in sets of threes you couldn't miss it unless you had a college education. Let me show you.

On the earth, you have only three things: land, sea and air. If someone asks you a question, there are three basic ways to answer it: yes, no, or maybe. When you measure the temperature of something, it is hot, cold or lukewarm. Music is comprised of three parts: harmony, melody and rhythm. A married couple is not referred to as a family until they have a child, the third part. Matter is made up of three parts: protons, electrons and neutrons. The Bible is composed of three parts: in the Old Testament it is the Law, the Writings, and the Prophets; in the New Testament it is the Gospels, the Acts, and the Epistles. The Lord's inner circle of apostles was Peter, James and John. As I detailed in a previous chapter, the Bible is composed of the Old Testament, the New Testament, and the Incarnate Word, the Lord Jesus Christ. There are three kingdoms on this earth; animal, vegetable and mineral. There are only three primary colors: red, blue and yellow. Every other color is some combination of those three. The list is endless. In every one of those examples, if you take away one part, the entire set disappears. A football is made of an outer leather cover, a bladder and air. If you take away any one of the three, you don't have a football. If you take away the height, depth, or width of any object, the object ceases to exist, even if it retains the other two dimensions. Everything in this universe is comprised of three basic parts.

Your body is composed of a circulatory system, a skeletal system, and a nervous

## Chapter 13 - Numerology

system. That's not all, you have a reproductive tract, a digestive tract, and a respiratory tract. I'd like to see you do without one of those three.

When you go to school, you go to grade school, junior high, then high school. After you graduate, you go to junior college, college, and graduate school. When you earn your degree, you can get a bachelor's, master's, or doctorate. The Federal Government is made up of three branches: Executive, Legislative and Judicial. The countries of the world are divided into East, West, and the Third World countries. There are only three. I could go on forever, but I think you have the point by now.

Now let's look at this in more detail. If you want to get saved, the Bible says you must believe in the name of the only begotten Son of God. What is His Name? It is the Lord Jesus Christ. There are three parts to His name. "Lord" represents His deity, and it is His claim to be God manifest in the flesh. "Jesus" was His earthly name' and represents His humanity. "Christ" means the anointed of God and represents His claim to the throne as King of all the Earth. You can't separate those three. If you encounter someone who will not say all three together, you are dealing with a phony. He is the Lord Jesus Christ.

You need to be careful, there are two Christs in the Bible: the right one and the wrong one. Just because someone uses the name of Christ does not necessarily mean he is referring to the right one. You better check him out.

That is why all the liberals will talk about Christ, the love of Christ, or serving Christ; they will talk about Jesus, and what a great man He was, but they will never put the three titles together and talk about the Lord Jesus Christ. The reason is because in their church, in their message, in their religion they are talking about the wrong Christ. I have watched them on TV and listened to them on the radio for fifteen years and heard them talk about Christ, the Christ of Calvary, the Christ of glory, the coming of Christ, the love of Christ, trusting Christ, and on and on, but they never refer to Him as the Lord Jesus Christ. When was the last time you heard a Jehovah's Witness mention the name of Jesus Christ using all three titles? Probably never.

That's not all, there are three offices in the Old Testament: Prophet, Priest and King - only three. There are only two men in the Bible who held all three: David and the Lord Jesus Christ. Moses could have held all three offices, but he "beat around the bush" too long and the Lord made his brother Aaron the priest. Saul tried to hold all three offices and that's why God killed him: because he tried to usurp the priesthood. David is the only man in the Bible outside of the Lord Jesus Christ who held all three offices: Prophet, Priest and King.



God is a trinity, and the universe is patterned after God. Therefore, anything in this universe can be laid out by threes. For a long time scientists were looking for a planet "X" which supposedly was inside the orbit of Mercury. They even thought they saw it a couple of times. They have always speculated about the possibility of other planets outside of Pluto. There are no more outside of Pluto, and there is no planet "X", because there are only nine planets. Those nine planets are made up of three inner, three middle, and three outer planets - three times three. That is the way God set it up.

I am not saying all those suns out there have nine planets around them, but they all have multiples of three. God's system in the universe is threes. Earlier, I took an entire chapter to explain how God teaches you about things you can't see by the examples set forth in the things you can see. If I want to study the galaxies and the expanse of outer space I can't see, the best way is by studying the visible things God has shown me because Romans 1:20 says the invisible things I can't see are clearly understood by the things God made. In our solar system, I have a model for me to evaluate and understand through the word of God so I can see what it is like out there in the expanses of the universe.

Now let's look at a saved man and an unsaved man. A saved man is made of three parts: body, soul and spirit. An unsaved man has only two parts, a body and a soul, but a dead spirit. He is dead spiritually, he had no life as God sees him. So if you are saved, you are a manifestation of God. God has a body; the Lord Jesus Christ. God has a soul, God the Father. God has a spirit, the Holy Spirit.

So the number THREE represents the basic structure of the universe. God couldn't find any better pattern by which to lay out the universe than Himself. He used the perfect example of Himself and patterned everything in the universe in sets of threes. If you ever really unlock that truth, it will revolutionize your Bible study.

## **FOUR**

I am just going to skip the number FOUR. As I mentioned earlier, I don't take the Bible anywhere that is not clear, and there is nothing conclusive I have ever been able to discover on the number FOUR, either in the Bible text itself or from anyone's writings. Some writers have made FOUR the number of the earth. It might be, I don't know; but there is no conclusive proof. I learned a long time ago to never try to teach something that I don't have worked out in my own mind first, so we will just pass four and move on.

## FIVE

Practically every writer on numerology will tell you FIVE is the number of grace. FIVE is NOT the number of grace. In the Bible FIVE is the number of **death**. There is only one instance in the Bible where FIVE can be construed as grace, and that is in the person of the Lord Jesus Christ. But the grace that resulted in that situation was through His DEATH.

The first person in history to die was Abel. He died at the hand of his brother Cain - that hand had FIVE fingers on it. Proverbs 6:17 says God hates hands that shed innocent blood. The first mention specifically of a man dying in the Bible is in Genesis 5:5. Remember the law of first mention?

FIVE is not only the number of death, but it also deals with everything connected with tragedy in the Bible. In the Old Testament, in Kings and Chronicles, you will see time and time again where someone is killed by being smote under the fifth rib. That is the way people were killed in the Old Testament. In combat training you are taught to fight and kill somebody with a knife. They teach you to put your hand over the guy's face so he doesn't scream and instead of sticking him in the back, they tell you to stick it up under the rib cage and run it up into the heart at an angle. It goes in under the FIFTH rib - the number of death. When that Roman soldier took his spear and stuck it into the heart of the Lord, it went in under the fifth rib. (It doesn't specifically say that, but sometimes the Bible doesn't specifically mention something because of its consistency.)

When the Lord Jesus Christ was crucified He had five wounds in His body: two in the hands, two in the feet, and one in the side.

That's not all, in 1Samuel when David went up to fight Goliath he took five stones. Of course, the reason for that is Goliath had four brothers, as it says in 1Chronicles. David had confidence, went in the name of the Lord, and he took five stones, one for Goliath and one for each of his brothers, but there is the further significance of FIVE stones being chosen - the number of death.

Consider something else. In Isaiah 14, the devil is called Lucifer, which is the only time he is referred to by that name in the Bible. That reference is at the time of his fall, and prior to that time, he is called Lucifer. From that time on, he is called Satan (5 letters), the Devil (5 letters), and in the tribulation, a Beast (5 letters).

Of course, someone who wants to be theological says, "What about Jesus, He had five letters in His name also." Yes, but do you know why He was born? The

Bible says when He was born He was wrapped in swaddling clothes. Swaddling clothes are grave clothes. That baby was born to die.

In 2Corinthians 11:24, Paul said he was whipped five times by the Jews for preaching the Lord Jesus Christ. He said about his whippings that he bore in his body the marks of the Lord Jesus Christ. Those marks were the marks of death. Over and over in his writings he talks about being dead in Jesus Christ. In Galatians 2:20 he said he was crucified with Christ. In Romans 6:8 he said he was dead with Christ. In Colossians 3:3 he said he was dead. Those whippings he took from the Jews confirmed his death to the world and his life in Christ, and they happened FIVE times.

These things are true even in the world. As I have mentioned many times before, the unsaved world lives according to the word of God whether they believe it or not. When I was in the military, anyone who had anything to do with communication was taught the standard frequency for SOS in an emergency, internationally, is 500 kilohertz. Not only that, the term “Mayday” is an international distress signal. For the longest time, I could never figure that out. Why “Mayday”? Well, May is the FIFTH month of the year, and FIVE represents death. You won't beat the book

FIVE in the Bible represents death, destruction, misery, tragedy, and all kinds of related problems. By the way, I'm sure this is just a coincidence, but DEATH and GRAVE also have five letters.

## SIX

The number SIX represents **man** in the Bible. In Genesis chapter **SIX** God drowned out the world with a flood. But in reality, God didn't judge “the world”, He judged mankind. If you lay out the chronology, you find God brought that judgment in the 600<sup>th</sup> year of Noah's life.

Almost everyone today is somewhat conscious of the number 666. That is the Antichrist's number from Revelation 13:18:, three times the number of man. Notice in Revelation 13:18 the Bible calls him a man. The Antichrist will be a man. That is very important, because the Antichrist will look like a man, but at the same time, there is a great spiritual significance you could miss if you don't get these numbers down.

We have already seen how the Devil always imitates the Lord Jesus Christ. He changes the word of God and questions its authority in order to confuse and blind people. He uses the Bible as his base of operation so he can pass off as being the

## Chapter 13 - Numerology

real thing, but in reality, he is simply the greatest counterfeit of the Lord Jesus Christ in existence.

Now we know the Lord Jesus Christ has a thousand year kingdom, the millennial reign. All during history, the Devil has tried to counterfeit that thousand year reign. I suppose the greatest examples in history so far are the 1<sup>st</sup>, 2<sup>nd</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> Reichs.

The word “Reich” means “1000”. When Adolph Hitler came into power he made up his mind that his Reich was going to be a 1000 year reign. But his reign of terror was only a foreshadowing of how the Antichrist is going to do it. The 2<sup>nd</sup> Reich was set up by Kaiser Wilhelm in the “New” Germany of 1913 or 1914 who also had plans for 1000 year reigns. The 1<sup>st</sup> Reich was the “Holy” Roman Empire which ran from around 500 AD until around 1500 AD. Every one of those are the efforts of man to usher in a “golden age” kingdom of prosperity and peace without God.

When you consider that in a theological sense, the Devil has prepared us for his false kingdom by the teachings of A-Millennialism and Post-Millennialism. A-Millennialism is the teaching that there is no physical, literal reign of Christ on the earth, only a spiritual one. A-Millennialism was fostered out of Alexandria, Egypt, with the corrupt manuscripts. The Post-Millennialism teaching says we bring in the kingdom and Christ comes back after it is all set up. That is why every Communist, every Freudian psychologist, every psychiatrist, every liberal, everyone in the world outside of Bible believing Christians can live happily and conveniently in an A-Millennial or Post-Millennial structure.

So when the Antichrist shows up, he will set up his false kingdom by counterfeiting the trinity. The reason 666 is his number is because the Antichrist will have a counterfeit trinity. He will have the beast, false prophet, and the Antichrist, himself. Look at **Revelation 13:18**:

***Here is wisdom. Let him that hath understanding count the number of the beast: for it is the number of a man; and his number is Six hundred threescore and six.***

Whenever the Bible says something like, “Here is wisdom...”, then pay close attention, because God is getting ready to show you a great truth. Do you want wisdom? Do you want to get a key to something? Do you want to get some light on the subject? Here is wisdom. “Count the number of the beast.” Why? Here is the definition: “for it is the number of a man; and his number is Six hundred threescore and six.”

**SIX** is the number of man in the word of God.

## SEVEN

**SEVEN** in the Bible is God's perfect number; the number of **perfection** or **completeness**. God does everything in a series of SEVEN. Since God does everything perfectly, He has to do it by sevens, the number of perfection. SEVEN will always mark the end of things. When you hit seven, it is over in the Bible, it will never go on, seven ends it. Gentiles count by tens. They count, "1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10" and then they start over, "11, 12, 13, 14, etc." But God counts, "1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7" and then starts over. That is a tremendously important key to the Bible. Seven is perhaps the most important number in the Bible. If you ever really learn that, you will be able to put the entire Bible together, especially in matters of history and prophecy.

In the world, **SEVEN** is supposed to be a lucky number. When people talk about lucky seven, seventh heaven, and the seventh inning stretch, or when dice players shoot for sevens, they have absolutely no idea they are following the word of God. The greatest joke God ever played on a lost world is making them operate according to the Bible whether they believe it or not.

SEVEN is God's number. SEVEN is also associated with things that are good. In the book of Genesis when Noah went into the ark, he took in animals by twos, but the clean animals by sevens, because those animals were used for sacrificial purposes.

The first mention of SEVEN in the Bible is in Genesis 2 where God rested the seventh day.

***Thus the heavens and the earth were finished, and all the host of them. And on the seventh day God ended his work which he had made; and he rested on the seventh day from all his work which he had made.***

**Genesis 2:1-2**

When it says God rested, it doesn't mean God took a nap to recover from all the energy He exerted in creation. God doesn't get tired. You have to read this in the light of the context and in the knowledge of God. God didn't rest because He was tired, He simply ceased work because there was nothing else to do. God's work was completed. It was perfect and complete on the seventh day. SEVEN is the number of perfection and completeness. Now look at **Genesis 2:3**:

***And God blessed the seventh day, and sanctified it: because that in it he had rested from all his work which God created and made.***

God blessed the seventh day and sanctified it, or set it apart, because there was

## Chapter 13 - Numerology

something special about it. The seventh day is a picture of something. God told the Jews to sanctify it and keep it holy as a SIGN pointing to future events. Of course, we have already seen from many other passages of scripture that the Sabbath or seventh day is a picture of the Millennial rest when Jesus Christ returns to this earth to establish His kingdom.

For example, in the book of Joshua the children of Israel marched around Jericho seven days, and on the seventh day they marched around it seven times. In Joshua 6:4, they were told to blow seven trumpets. Where else do you read about seven trumpets? In the book of Revelation, which deals with the end times. In verse 15 they marched around the city seven times, once for each year of the tribulation period, and every time they went around they blew the trumpet.

The prevalence of the number SEVEN shows me the book of Joshua is a picture of the tribulation period. The Old Testament name "Joshua" in Hebrew means Jesus, and the doctrinal context of the book of Joshua is the second coming of the Lord Jesus Christ, when God's plan will be perfected and completed as manifested in the Millennial kingdom.

The book of Revelation is the last book of the Bible; it is the book that wraps it all up and finishes history and begins eternity. I know that by the abundance of the SEVENS in it. The book of Revelation contains seven churches, seven spirits, seven golden candlesticks, seven stars, seven angels, seven lamps of fire, a book with seven seals, seven horns and seven eyes on the Lamb, seven trumpets, seven thunders, seven thousand people die in an earthquake in Revelation 11:13, a dragon with seven heads and seven crowns, seven plagues, seven golden vials, seven mountains, and seven kings. You would think God was trying to make a point, wouldn't you?

There are only three angels named in the Bible: Gabriel (7 letters), Michael (7 letters), and Lucifer (7 letters). The Devil was named Lucifer BEFORE he fell in Isaiah 14, which is the only time in the Bible he is called by that name. The Bible says about the devil in Ezekiel 28 he was PERFECT (Lucifer - 7 letters) in all his ways until iniquity was found in him, and he is never called Lucifer again. SEVEN is God's perfect number.

Let's look at the Old Testament feasts in Leviticus 23. There are a total of seven feasts, and they run a period of seven months. That pictures the course of human events, which will only run 7000 years; therefore, there is no feast after the seventh Jewish month on the calendar. Notice also the last feast is the feast of tabernacles. That shows me clearly that the time of the second coming of Christ is the feast of tabernacles. The feast of tabernacles is in September - Yom Kippur, to

the orthodox Jew today. An orthodox Jew has no idea what Yom Kippur is; it is the date of the second coming of Christ.

In Exodus 21, God told the children of Israel to work their slaves six years and then let them go free the seventh year. In Leviticus 25:1-7 the Bible says to work the land six years and let it rest the seventh.

I don't know if you have picked this up or not, but all the things God gave to the Jews in the Old Testament were given to them for a reason. For instance, our schedule is six days on and one day off. That is the system. Everyone thinks Sunday is a “day of rest”, a traditional time when you don't do anything. There was a time when people looked at you like you were some kind of idiot if you cut your grass on Sunday. That was just traditional. Why? Because this world runs by the Bible whether they believe it or not. God set the system up, and it is an infallible system.

The reason our land is all burnt out and we can't get any crops out of it is because we didn't follow God's order in Leviticus about planting your crops six years and letting the land rest the seventh. Instead, we were so greedy and stupid we pumped the land full of chemicals and fertilizers to make it produce better temporarily, and then twenty years later we wonder why everyone is getting cancer. It's very simple: we did not obey the principles of the word of God.

Let's look at SEVEN from a “secular” standpoint, understanding, of course, that God made it this way. Every seventh year your body changes completely, that is, all your cells go through a complete cycle in this length of time. There are seven entrances to your soul; in other words, there are seven holes in your head (two eyes, two ears, two nostrils, one mouth). A piano has seven notes, only seven, the next one goes up an octave and it all starts over again. There are only seven colors in art: red, yellow, blue, orange, green, purple and black. Any painting can be made with these seven colors. When you have seven, you have all there is. SEVEN is the most important number in the Bible because it is God's perfect and complete number. Once you really understand that, things become a lot easier to figure out.

## EIGHT

Eight is not hard to figure out once you understand the significance of seven. If seven is the end, the complete perfect number, then EIGHT has to start the process over. **1Peter 3:19-20** says:

***By which also he went and preached unto the spirits in prison;***

***Which sometime were disobedient, when once the longsuffering of God waited in the days of Noah, while the ark was a preparing, wherein few, that is, EIGHT souls were saved by water.***

When God sent the flood, Noah took his wife and his three boys with their wives into the ark. That is eight people. When those eight people came off the ark, they were sole possessors of the earth. God started over with eight people. It was a **new beginning** for the earth. When God is describing His plans for judging the world in Genesis 6, He announces His new beginning by saying that Noah found grace in the eyes of the Lord. That announcement takes place in verse 8. Also, in the Old Testament, there was a ritual which is also described in **Luke 2:21**:

***And when eight days were accomplished for the circumcising of the child, his name was called JESUS, which was so named of the angel before he was conceived in the womb.***

Jesus was circumcised on the eighth day. That is a picture of something. In the Old Testament, they physically circumcised male children. Circumcision was a physical operation that affected the reproductive organ of the body. In the New Testament, there is a spiritual circumcision, an operation made without hands, which cuts away your flesh from your soul, and at that point in time, you become a new creature in Christ Jesus through the new birth. You get a new beginning. Circumcision in the Old Testament is a picture physically of what was going to take place spiritually in the New Testament. God used circumcision as a sign; a part of the body being cut that dealt with the seed and birth, because the Bible says you experience a new birth not of corruptible seed, but of incorruptible by the word of God; and in the Old Testament, that took place on the eighth day, the number of new beginnings.

## NINE

The first time NINE plays a role in the Bible is in Genesis chapter 9. Let's look at verse 1:

***And God blessed Noah and his sons, and said unto them, Be fruitful, and multiply, and replenish the earth.***

The first time you run into NINE, someone is told to be fruitful and multiply and replenish the earth. NINE in the Bible stands for **fruit bearing**. **Genesis 9:9** says:

***And I, behold, I establish my covenant with you, and with your seed after you.***



Notice it has something to do with his seed after him. Noah was told to bear fruit, and that God would keep His promises to that fruit.

Noah was given a commission to multiply and replenish the earth; this was the same commission given to Adam. In the New Testament, you are told to bear fruit also, but your commission is to go into all the world, preach the gospel, and be fruitful and multiply and bear spiritual fruit by winning people to Jesus Christ. The difference is that Noah was in the physical kingdom of heaven, and you are in the spiritual kingdom of God.

Let's look at another example of NINE. In chapter 12 of Genesis, a man is called out: Abraham. God promised Abraham he would bear a son who would bring forth an entire nation of people - that is fruit bearing! Look at **Genesis 17:1** and let's see when this actually took place:

***And when Abram was ninety years old and nine, the Lord appeared to Abram, and said unto him, I am the Almighty God; walk before me, and be thou perfect.***

God gave Abraham that son when he was ninety-nine years old, because **NINE** is the number of fruit bearing.

Let's consider another example. 1Corinthians 12 deals with spiritual gifts. Spiritual gifts are given to the body of Christ so people can be ministered unto. When you, as a child of God, use those spiritual gifts to deal with unsaved people, eventually, you bear fruit: someone will get saved. After that person gets saved, those gifts are used to disciple him; to strengthen him and grow him up so he can bear fruit. The whole purpose of spiritual gifts is to bear fruit, and there are NINE gifts listed in the passage.

That's not all. Let's look at Galatians **5:22-23**:

***But the fruit of the Spirit is love, joy, peace, longsuffering, gentleness, goodness, faith, Meekness, temperance: against such there is no law.***

There are NINE attributes of the fruit of the spirit in that passage. Look at something else. Now I know the King James translators had nothing to do with this because they were just poor stupid scholars who did not have the best manuscripts available to them and just did the best they could with the limited information they had, and I realize this is probably just a coincidence, but did you notice the fruit of the Spirit in this passage is detailed in verses 22 and 23?

$$\underline{2} + \underline{2} + \underline{2} + \underline{3} = 9$$

## Chapter 13 - Numerology

I thank God I don't have to rely on the King James translators as the final authority, but I can trust the God of the universe to give me truth and preserve it for me. You see, I have a Holy Bible (9 letters). Which version do I have? A King James (9 letters). When was that Bible put out? in 1611.

$$1 + 6 + 1 + 1 = 9$$

That is a fruit bearing book. There have been more people won to Christ through the preaching of the King James Bible than all the other books in history combined. From 1600-1900, three-fourths of the world was converted to Christianity through the missionary efforts of England and America, and during that entire time, the only English Bible anyone had was a King James Bible. It is the most fruitful book in the history of the world. If you want to bear fruit in your life for God, get the book that has the marks of fruit bearing on it.

**TEN**

TEN is the number of the Gentiles. Let's look at some examples. The tenth man from Adam in the genealogy in Genesis is Noah. Noah is the father of the Gentiles. Every Gentile on earth comes from one of his three sons. The first Gentile kingdom is established in Genesis 10 with Nimrod. Isaac is a type of Christ in the Old Testament, and when Abraham sent Eleazar to find him a wife, he found Rebekah, a Gentile, and the dowry he took was 10 camels.

In Acts 10, Peter officially took the gospel to the Gentiles for the first time. The entire chapter deals with the salvation of Cornelius - a Gentile. This is the first revelation to Peter that Gentiles are to be saved also.

Consider Romans 10. In Romans 9 through 11, Paul takes time out to explain God's dealing with the nation of Israel. But in chapter 10, Paul goes back to the Gentiles, and right in the middle of the greatest passage in the New Testament on the restoration of Israel he sends out the call to the Gentiles. This chapter contains those great salvation verses which is the culmination of the "Roman's Road" plan of salvation. I suppose there have been more people won to Christ through this chapter than any other single chapter in the Bible, and probably the two greatest verses in the chapter are verse 9 (fruit bearing) and verse 10 (Gentiles). These all can't be coincidences; God had something in mind by laying out the verses this way.

That's not all. Let's look at **John 10**, the great dissertation on the good shepherd. Notice what he says:

***Then said Jesus unto them again, Verily, verily, I say unto you. I am the***

*door of the sheep.*

*All that ever came before me are thieves and robbers: but the sheep did not hear them.*

*I am the door: by me if any man enter in, he shall be saved, and shall go in and out, and find pasture.*

*The thief cometh not, but for to steal, and to kill, and to destroy: I am come that they might have life, and that they might have it more abundantly.*

*I am the good shepherd: the good shepherd giveth his life for the sheep.*

*But he that is an hireling, and not the shepherd, whose own the sheep are not, seeth the wolf coming, and leaveth the sheep, and fleeth: and the wolf catcheth them, and scattereth the sheep.*

*The hireling fleeth, because he is an hireling, and careth not for the sheep.*

*I am the good shepherd, and know my sheep, and am known of mine.*

*As the Father knoweth me, even so know I the Father: and I lay down my life for the sheep.*

*And other sheep I have, which are not of this fold: them also I must bring, and they shall hear my voice; and there shall be one fold, and one shepherd.*

**John 10:7-16**

Those other sheep “not of this fold” are the Gentiles. There shall be one fold just like the one body of Christ. He said there would be one shepherd in John 10, and in Romans 10, He said there is one Lord over both Jew and Gentile.

The first Gentile kingdom in the Bible started in Genesis 10, and the last Gentile kingdom in the Bible is represented by the ten toes of the book of Daniel and the ten kings of the book of Revelation. So TEN is the number of the Gentiles.

---

Now we are through with the primary numbers, one through ten. In most situations, the other numbers can be reduced to these basic ten, but there are a few more numbers which by themselves, bear tremendous significance in the word of God.

## TWELVE

The number TWELVE clearly deals with the nation of Israel. Israel has twelve tribes. There were twelve stones in the breastplate of Aaron. Israel is represented

## Chapter 13 - Numerology

by twelve stars in Joseph's dream in Genesis. There are twelve gates in New Jerusalem for the twelve tribes. The tree of life of which the Jews will partake in eternity has twelve manner of fruit in Revelation 22. Of course, the first Jew, Abraham, is called out in Genesis chapter 12, and there are twelve natural land boundaries on the earth. These are:

- |                     |                          |
|---------------------|--------------------------|
| (1) North America   | (7) Africa               |
| (2) South America   | (8) Antarctica           |
| (3) Central America | (9) Asia                 |
| (4) Australia       | (10) Asia Minor          |
| (5) Greenland       | (11) Indonesia           |
| (6) Europe          | (12) Arctic Polar Region |

Those twelve land boundaries will be given to the Jews in the Millennium, and they will rule the earth from those twelve land boundaries. The Jews will take of the tree of life which bears twelve manner of fruit, and will come to Jerusalem one month of the year by tribe to worship the Lord in His temple (there are 12 months). When they get to Jerusalem, they will find the twelve Apostles sitting on twelve thrones judging the twelve tribes of Israel according to Matthew 19:28. From there they will go into New Jerusalem which has twelve gates, with twelve stones on those twelve gates, and go out into outer space which has twelve constellations. (And you thought the twelve signs of the Zodiac were just something astrologists thought up in their spare time. As I have mentioned several times in this book, everything in this universe runs by the word of God whether anyone believes it or not.) Everything in eternity concerning the Jew populating the universe will run in groups of twelves. That truth can be traced from the calling out of Abraham in Genesis 12 through eternity where the Jews will rule the world and populate outer space.

# THIRTEEN

This number is real easy to identify, as you might guess just from its connotation in the secular world. The first time the number appears in the Bible is in **Genesis 14:4**:

***Twelve years they served Chedorlaomer, and in the thirteenth year they rebelled.***

Notice there is a rebellion in the thirteenth year of someone's reign. That was not just an accidental coincidence. THIRTEEN in the Bible will always line up with the Devil. Of course, he is the ringleader of all rebellion because he led the first

rebellion in Isaiah 14. Just as the number seven is universally a “lucky” number, the number THIRTEEN is universally an “unlucky” number. In many hotels and office buildings there is no floor 13, they go from 12 to 14 and skip 13. In most airport terminals, they won't put a gate 13, or they won't put seat 13 on the plane because they are superstitious. Again, they are following the word of God whether they believe it or not, because the Bible defined the number THIRTEEN as evil long before anyone ever got “superstitious” about it.

The first man in the Bible who has any association with the number THIRTEEN is Nimrod. He was the first king of Babylon, and in the genealogy in Genesis, he is the thirteenth man from Adam. Judas Iscariot (13 letters) is said to be a devil in John 6. You will find THIRTEEN evils of the human heart listed in Mark 7:20-23. In Leviticus 11 there is a list of unclean animals totaling 26 - a multiple of THIRTEEN. The consistency of the number THIRTEEN in scripture is amazing.

In the Gospel of Mark, the devil makes his first appearance in Mark 1:13. As we studied earlier, the Antichrist's number is 666. That number shows up specifically in three verses: 2Chronicles 9:13, Ezra 2:13, and Revelation 13:18 ( $6 + 6 + 6 = 18$ ). Look at what is said in **Genesis 13:13**:

***But the men of Sodom were wicked and sinners before the Lord exceedingly.***

In Deuteronomy 13 the Lord covers the subject of witchcraft. In Revelation 12 when the Devil led his rebellion, he takes 1/3 of the angels with him - 1/3...13. In Revelation 17:5 the Bible talks about the great mystery religion, run by the devil, which will be used to damn the world, and there are 13 words in block capital letters. Those 13 words have 65 letters - 5 (death) times 13 (rebellion or the devil). Thirteen is always connected with rebellion.

Now don't misunderstand me, but America started with a rebellion against England. You say, “Yes, but it was a good rebellion for just causes.” Probably so, but it was still a rebellion. I will bet King George didn't think it was a good rebellion. There were thousands of mothers in England, many of whom were saved, who lost their sons and husbands in that war who didn't think it was all that great of a rebellion. Whether it was good or bad is not the point, America started with a rebellion. The victory was won in 76 ( $7 + 6 = 13$ ) with a flag that had 13 stripes and 13 stars representing 13 colonies that rebelled, with a slogan that read “Don't tread on me” (13 letters).

So THIRTEEN is the devil's number. It is associated with rebellion and all kinds of terrible evil things both in the Bible and outside the Bible. If you don't believe that, just watch the reactions of people around you the next time Friday the

## Chapter 13 - Numerology

thirteenth comes around.

# FORTY

The first time the number FORTY appears in scripture is in Genesis 7:4:

***For yet seven days, and I will cause it to rain upon the earth forty days and forty nights; and every living substance that I have made will I destroy from off the face of the earth.***

The number FORTY is the number of testing in the Bible. Let's look at some of the examples and watch the consistency.

Isaac was 40 years old when he married Rebekah. Esau was 40 years old when he got messed up in the book of Genesis. The children of Israel wandered 40 years in the wilderness while God purged the rebels out of their midst. Moses was on mount Sinai 40 days in Exodus 24:18. In 1Kings 19:8, Elijah was on the mountain 40 days. Jesus was in the wilderness 40 days being tempted by the devil. Moses was 40 years old when God first called him to deliver Israel; but he messed up and killed a man, and had to flee to the back side of the desert where he stayed for another 40 years until God had prepared him to lead the nation of Israel out of Egypt. Israel was under Egyptian bondage for 400 years - 10 (Gentile number) times 40 (the number of testing). Eli was judge over Israel for 40 years. Samuel was judge over Israel for 40 years. Saul was king for 40 years, David was king for 40 years, and Solomon was king for 40 years.

All these examples of FORTY are periods of time where God tested and proved a man or a nation. Whenever the number FORTY appears in scripture, there will be some type of test associated with it.

Now those are the major numbers and their significance in the Bible. But again, a final caution: **don't go to extremes**. These numbers can reveal a great deal of truth if you use discretion, but they can be a trap if you go too far. Where it is clear, learn from God's number system. Where it is not so clear, tread lightly.

# Chapter 14

## Cross - Referencing

*Which things also we speak, not in the words which man's wisdom teacheth, but which the Holy Ghost teacheth; comparing spiritual things with spiritual.*

**1Corinthians 2:13**

In chapter three of this book, I detailed the rules of Bible study, and one of those was to compare scripture with scripture. The Bible is the most unusual book in existence because of this principle.

The word of God is completely self-sufficient; it contains its own definitions of terms, and is its own commentary. This is not true of any other book. The answers to the questions raised in reading the Bible are found within the pages of the Bible itself. As such, it is essential to develop a system of notes and cross-references for your Bible.

Now let me preface my remarks - what works for me won't necessarily work for you in all aspects, and vice versa. The key is not to copy my methods exactly, but instead to develop your own systematic procedure which works for you.

In this book, I have given you a lot of material, but this is only the beginning. You will get a lot more material the rest of your life as long as you stay in the word of God. You will never quit learning things about the Bible, and you must realize you cannot remember it all. Learning something does you no good if you can't put the information somewhere so you can find it when needed. With this in mind, I hope to help you develop a system of notes and cross-references for your Bible.

I made a lot of dumb mistakes when I was a young Christian, and I will tell you about them so you can profit from them. When I got saved, I did what any good

## Chapter 14 - Cross-Referencing

Christian would: I bought a wide margin Bible, and began putting notes in it. After a while, I realized there was more to it than that. I began to see I needed a system for my notes or they would not make sense.

I have had the same wide margin Bible now for about fourteen years. It probably has about forty thousand cross-references in it. When someone asks me a question about the Bible, I don't have everything I know memorized, instead I have a system of notes where I can find things easily. For instance, if someone asks me a question about the rapture of the church, I have a reference in my mind I always start from. In that place in my Bible there are about sixty cross-references on the subject, and all the information I have on it is there.

You will eventually need to do that for yourself. You will never remember it all no matter how smart you are. Not only that, it will make your Bible the most precious thing in your life. I would rather lose anything in the world than my Bible because I have fourteen years of my life's work in that one book. I take it with me on trips. I carry it to work with me every day. I may not specifically use it every day, but I never want to be away from it. It is always with me. I don't leave it at home, because the house may burn down. I couldn't care less about the house, I can always get another one, but I can't replace my Bible.

Recently there was a survey made of a “representative sample” of Americans and the question was: “What is the most important thing in your house?” The results of that survey show the depth of moral and spiritual degeneracy of this sick nation. Seventy-two percent said, “My television.” What a disgrace!

The most important thing in my house is my Bible. You can blow up my car, burn down the house, steal my clothes, take anything you want, just leave my Bible alone! My entire life is wrapped up in the pages of that precious book.

Once I thought I lost my Bible. It was in my briefcase, and I set it down outside my car at church one night after Bible study, got involved in something else briefly, then drove off and left it there. By the time I got home I realized what had happened and went back to church to find it. When I got there it was gone. I panicked. It was about 11:00 pm, so I called my wife and told her what was going on, and not to expect me home until I found my Bible. I then picked up my class roll and began at the A's and started calling everyone who had been at Bible study that night to find my Bible. I was prepared to stay up as long as necessary and do whatever I needed to find that book.

About half an hour later, the phone rang between my calls. It was my wife. She had gotten a call from one of my members who found the briefcase and picked it up for me. I called him and he offered to bring it to the church the next day for



me. I said, “Nothing doing, I will be at your house in ten minutes to get it.”

You may think I am crazy for acting that way over a “silly old book” when there are hundreds just like it available in any book store. But there is not another book in the world like my Bible with all my notes representing my life's work. I cannot afford to let anything happen to it.

Now let me show you what NOT to do in putting notes in a Bible.

Most Bibles are made with thin paper, and the best thing to use for notes is an artist's Rapidograph pen. But a Rapidograph is the most contrary thing you will ever use. It clogs constantly and has to be cleaned every time you use it. I am not patient enough to use one. I have always used an accountant's fine point pen in black, and the best brand I have found has been the “Pilot” brand pen. Blue or red or other colors always bleed badly, but the black bleeds only very slightly and not enough to cause a problem. A Rapidograph will not bleed at all because it uses India ink.

When I first started, I used a felt tip pen. What an idiot I was! You can't write small enough to get any information in there, and talk about bleeding!

Now you are probably thinking, “This isn't so important,” but wait about five years when you have thousands of notes in your Bible. I have tried a half dozen times to re-copy the notes in my Bible, and I gave up every time. I will stick with that one book the rest of my life, Lord willing, because it is impossible to go through that many notes.

If you want to see my spiritual growth, just look at the notes in my Bible. You will find some places where they are scratched out because I thought they were right at the time, but found out later they were not.

Now let me show you some examples. On the next page I am including a copy of my Bible in Genesis 3-5. This will give you some idea of the mistakes I made in taking notes as a young Christian.

Notice in the margin around Genesis 4:1-4 how I put some notes in sideways so you couldn't get anything else in there. I have a lot more information now on that passage I would like to put in there now, but I can't because of my stupidity. But when I was putting that note in, it was a big thing to me.

Look down around chapter 3 verse 17 where I wrote “curse of the ground”. That is stated right in the text, why do I need a note on that? What I have discovered about that curse on the ground since then could fill the entire area, but I can't use it because of how I began putting my notes in. I thought the key to spirituality was notes in your Bible, no matter what they said, so I would write down everything,



phone numbers, recipes, etc., and I made a mess out of it.

So don't put anything in your Bible you haven't worked out thoroughly first. You can get tons of material in those margins if you will condense it first through your own personal studies. The thing to do is take notes at Bible studies and church and in your personal studies on paper, then work them out and only put in what is important. I always took my notes right in the Bible, and made these mistakes for that reason.

Also, another benefit in transferring the notes into your Bible from paper is you have to go through the material again. You are much more likely to learn it that way.

In my system, I have grouped my notes into five different categories. These are the major types of references, but obviously you can't lock into them all the time. You can't catalogue God that neatly, but I can at least give you a start.

### **Subject References**

The first type of reference I have is subject references. Subject materials are things you can trace through the Bible dealing with certain subjects. Some examples are the seven resurrections, seven baptisms, seven mysteries, etc. These are not types, or historical events, but in a class all by themselves. They are doctrinal teachings contained in the word of God.

Let me take one of these in detail and go through it for you. In **1Corinthians 4:1-2** the Bible says:

***Let a man so account of us, as of the ministers of Christ, and stewards of the mysteries of God.***

***Moreover it is required in stewards, that a man be found faithful.***

Now in the margin of this passage in my Bible, I have the seven mysteries listed. They are:

- |  |                           |
|--|---------------------------|
| <b>1. God manifest in the flesh</b>                        | <b>1Timothy 3:16</b>      |
| <b>2. Christ in saved people</b>                           | <b>Colossians 1:27</b>    |
| <b>3. Jew and Gentile become one in the body of Christ</b> | <b>Ephesians 5:32</b>     |
| <b>4. Restoration of Israel</b>                            | <b>Romans 11:25</b>       |
| <b>5. Rapture of the church</b>                            | <b>1Corinthians 15:51</b> |
| <b>6. Mystery of iniquity</b>                              | <b>2Thessalonians 2:7</b> |
| <b>7. Babylon the Great Mystery Religion</b>               | <b>Revelation 17:5</b>    |

If I want to know something about the mysteries of God, I can run every reference on the subject I have from one place. The first mystery I have noted is in 1Timothy 3:16. In the margin next to this verse, there is a note saying,

## Chapter 14 - Cross-Referencing

“**Mystery #1**” which explains it briefly. At the end I have a note, “Go to Colossians 7:27”. That is the pattern through the seven mysteries. That is a “chain reference” of a subject through the entire Bible. I have a home base in my mind where I can find all the information I need; I only have to remember one verse. If anyone ever asks me a question about the mysteries, the first place which comes to mind is 1Corinthians 4, and from there I can find anything I need on the subject.

### Type References

The next references I have are types. Types are a major key to the Bible. I will go into detail here to show you the significance of these types, and how you can learn from them. There are major and minor types, and the more prominent ones must be learned if you ever intend to learn the Bible.

For instance, there are eighteen types of the Antichrist in the Bible. Why are there only eighteen? Because  $6 + 6 + 6 = 18$ . If you really want to know about the Antichrist, the information is NOT in Revelation, it is in the Old Testament in those eighteen types.

Now don't get carried away with types, they will break down eventually. Don't ever take a type too far; if it doesn't clearly say so, then don't try to force the application. Where it is clear, okay, but where it is not clear, leave it alone. Types are something which simply foreshadow the real thing; they are NOT the real thing.

Let's look at the eighteen types of the Antichrist in the Bible, not in complete detail, but just the basics.

1. **CAIN** - The first type of Antichrist in the Bible is Cain. In 1John 3, the Bible says he is “of that wicked one”. He is the first murderer in the Bible; what does the Bible say about the Devil in John 8:44? It says he was a murderer from the beginning. When Cain killed Abel, he received a mark, just like the Antichrist. Cain persecuted Abel for his “religion”, just as the Antichrist will do to the Jews in the tribulation.

2. **NIMROD** - The name Nimrod means “leopard”. The Antichrist is likened to a leopard in the book of Revelation. In the genealogy found in 1Chronicles 1, Nimrod is the thirteenth from Adam. You know the number thirteen in the Bible represents rebellion from our previous study. Nimrod set up the first Gentile kingdom in Babylon. It was a one world, one language, one religion united kingdom just like the one described of the Antichrist.

3. **PHARAOH** - In many of the Old Testament prophecies, the Antichrist is specifically called “Pharaoh, King of Egypt”. Pharaoh persecuted the nation of

Israel just like the Antichrist will. God brought plagues upon the nation of Egypt just like He will in the tribulation on the Antichrist.

4. **BALAK** - He is found in Numbers 22-25. He tries to get the nation of Israel to intermarry with the heathen nations so God will wipe them out, matching the plan of the Antichrist found in the book of Jude. In the book of Numbers, there is a picture of the Satanic trinity: Baal is the false god, Balak is the son of Baal, and Baalim is the false prophet.

5. **SISERA** - Sisera was a Gentile king who was defeated at Megiddo in Judges 4. That is where the battle of Armageddon will take place. He was killed by a head wound, just like the Antichrist.

6. **ABIMELECH** - Abimelech was a rebel in Judges 9. He was wounded by a blow on the head, but actually killed by a sword, like Goliath and the Antichrist.

7. **SAUL** - Saul was a demon possessed rebel against God. He usurped the priesthood in 1 Samuel 13, just like the Antichrist will do in the tribulation. Saul hated David, who is a type of Christ. Here we see a physical characteristic of the Antichrist: he is tall.

8. **GOLIATH** - Goliath was a tall man also. He was a mixture of angelic and human seed as it was in Genesis 6, and as described in a prophecy of the end times in Daniel 2. He was wounded in the head, then killed with a sword by David, a type of Christ.

9. **NABAL** - Nabal is found in 1 Samuel 25. He was an enemy of David that God killed because he was a “son of Belial”. Belial is the Old Testament name for the devil.

10. **ABSALOM** - In 2 Samuel 14:25, the Bible says there was no more beautiful man on the earth than Absalom. The Bible says the same thing about the devil in Ezekiel 28. The name Absalom comes from Abba (father) and Shalom (peace): “the Father of Peace”. In the book of Daniel, it is clear the Antichrist takes over the world through peace and flattery. Absalom stirred up trouble against David, a type of Christ. He went around kissing people - like Judas. The Bible says in Acts 1:25 that Judas went to his own place. In 2 Samuel 18:18 (6 + 6 + 6 twice), Absalom went to his own place. Absalom died by hanging from a tree, so did Judas. When Absalom rebelled against David, a type of Christ, in 2 Samuel 15:11, he took 1/3 of the men with him in the rebellion just like the devil takes 1/3 of the angels with him in the heavenly rebellion.

11. **SOLOMON** - Solomon is the only man in the Bible who is both a type of Christ and a type of the Antichrist. The reason for this is very clear if you know

## Chapter 14 - Cross-Referencing

the word of God. The devil is the greatest counterfeiter of the Lord Jesus Christ in the universe. They are so similar that without the Holy Spirit of God and an infallible written authority to guide you, you could not tell them apart. The list of similarities in the word of God between the devil and the Lord Jesus Christ is so long I cannot even begin to give it here. The devil does that to deceive people. If he showed up and completely denied Jesus and attacked Him openly, you could see the difference and make a clear choice. But by counterfeiting, he can confuse you and get you off the track. Solomon's number was 666 in 2Chronicles 9:13. He raised heavy taxes on the nation of Israel, just as described of the Antichrist in Daniel 11:20.

12. **JEROBOAM** - Jeroboam worshiped Baal through a golden calf, which men kissed, just like Judas kissed Jesus. In case you didn't know, the Antichrist will NOT put his mark on people with a super-duper invisible laser gun marking machine, but with a kiss. The kiss of "peace". You won't get that from reading all the prophecy books today, you get that from the Bible.

13. **AHAB** - Ahab was the most wicked king Israel ever had. He married a Phoenician Baal worshiper named Jezebel. From that time forward, every mother in the world who did not approve of their son's date called her "Jezebel". There is a lot to names. There are two names you will never see anyone in their right mind use for their kids: Judas and Jezebel. Of all the hundreds of Bible names, those two are singled out like that because of what they stand for. Jezebel is a type of the great harlot of Revelation 17 and 18. She and Ahab worshiped the queen of heaven, and Ahab had some priests running around called "Father" from the tribe of Dan, which went into apostasy in the book of Judges and never returned.

14. **SENNACHERIB** - Sennacherib was the king of Assyria who invaded Israel from the north in 2Chronicles 32 and 2Kings 18-20. In many Old Testament passages, the Antichrist is referred to as "the Assyrian".

15. **NEBUCHADNEZZAR** - Nebuchadnezzar built an image in Daniel 3 just like the one in Revelation 13. The dimensions of the image were 60 cubits by 6 cubits by 6 cubits (6-6-6 again). He persecuted the Jewish remnant just like the Antichrist will. He was king of Babylon, just like the Antichrist in Revelation 17 and 18, and is called a "dragon" in Jeremiah 51:34.

16. **HAMAN** - Haman is found in the book of Esther. He persecuted the Jews for their "religion", just as the Antichrist will do in the tribulation.

17. **HEROD** - Herod was in power at Christ's first coming. He represents the Roman leader who will be in power at Christ's second coming.

18. **JUDAS** - Judas is called the son of perdition in John 17, and the Antichrist

is called the same thing in 2Thessalonians. Judas is the last type of Antichrist in the Bible, and perhaps the greatest. He is a culmination of all the types before him. As you were going through the other seventeen, perhaps you noticed how many similarities there were between them and Judas. He is the only one who is given a name (the Son of Perdition) exactly identical to the Antichrist. You can learn more about the Antichrist by studying the life of Judas than by any other single method.

---

What I would suggest is that you start with the first one, Cain, and chain them together in your margin notes. That way, if you ever want to know something about the types of Antichrist in the Bible, all you have to remember is Cain and you can find the information. Of course, as time goes on, you will pick up more points of typology on these men and expand your notes. Also, after going through the material several times, you will remember it much easier.

Use your space wisely. Write small because you will always want to come back and put in more. You may not understand that now, but wait two or three years when you have accumulated about ten times the information you have now.

Let's look at another type and see what we can learn. Perhaps the greatest type of the Lord Jesus Christ in the Old Testament is Joseph. Joseph is the main character in the book of Genesis from chapter 37 to the end of the book. He is a picture of the Lord Jesus Christ in over 150 different particulars.

For instance, Joseph was rejected by his brothers the first time, and accepted the second time he met them. **John 1:11** says of Jesus:

***He came unto his own, and his own received him not.***

Jesus was rejected the first time by the Jews and will be accepted at His second coming.

In Genesis 40 there were two prisoners with Joseph in jail, and there were two thieves on the cross with Jesus. One of the prisoners in Genesis 40 was restored, one was killed. On the cross, one thief got saved, one was lost. Joseph did not commit any sin to deserve what he got. Jesus was tempted in all points like as we are yet without sin. Joseph was numbered with the transgressors, just like Jesus in Isaiah 53. Jesus and Joseph were both bound with ropes on their hands. Both elements of the Lord's supper were present in Genesis 40: bread and wine. In Genesis 40:11, the butler squeezed grapes into Pharaoh's cup; in Matthew 26:26-29, Jesus squeezed grapes into his cup at the Lord's Supper. There were three days between the butler's dream and his restoration. The Lord rose from the dead on the third day, and the Bible is clear the Old Testament saints rose with him to go to the Father.

## Chapter 14 - Cross-Referencing

Those are only a few of the points of similarity between Joseph and Jesus. As you continue to study, these points of typology will make the text come alive.

Now let's look at one more passage where several types merge into a single story. This is a great example of how types help you understand what God is trying to get across.

1Samuel 17 contains the story of David and Goliath. Every kid in Sunday school knows this story, but this story is so much more than just a little guy knocking down a big guy with a rock. This is David, a type of Christ, fighting Goliath, a type of the Antichrist. This battle will have some connection with the battle of Armageddon, and will be an inspirational type of the spiritual battle of Ephesians 6 we are involved in. Let's pick up the story in **1Samuel 17:32**:

***And David said to Saul, Let no man's heart fail because of him; thy servant will go and fight with this Philistine.***

The first thing I notice about Goliath is he is a Philistine. They were the arch enemies of the children of Israel. That teaches me the Antichrist will be the enemy of the Jews, and it also teaches me I have an enemy. The Bible says in 1Peter the devil is my adversary.

Notice something else: Goliath and the Philistines attacked Israel unprovoked. The devil operates the same way against you and me. Look at verse 33:

***And Saul said to David, Thou art not able to go against this Philistine to fight with him: for thou art but a youth, and he a man of war from his youth.***

That is very true. We are not able to fight against the devil, God has to fight the battle for us. There is no way the Jews will be able to withstand the combined forces of every nation on earth at the end of the tribulation. They will be supernaturally delivered by the direct intervention of God at the second coming of the Lord Jesus Christ. Let's go on:

***And David said unto Saul, Thy servant kept his father's sheep, and there came a lion, and a bear, and took a lamb out of the flock:***

***And I went out after him, and smote him, and delivered it out of his mouth: and when he arose against me, I caught him by his beard, and smote him, and slew him.***

***Thy servant slew both the lion and the bear: and this uncircumcised Philistine shall be as one of them, seeing he hath defied the armies of the living God.***



***David said moreover, The Lord that delivered me out of the paw of the lion, and out of the paw of the bear, he will deliver me out of the hand of this Philistine. And Saul said unto David, Go, and the Lord be with thee.***

**1Samuel 17:32-37**

David kept his father's sheep. John 10 clearly pictures Jesus as the “good shepherd” who keeps His father's sheep.

Also, in Revelation 13, the Antichrist is likened to a lion and a bear. When David said, “This uncircumcised Philistine shall be AS one of them,” that lines up Goliath with the Antichrist. Now look at verses 38 and 39:

***And Saul armed David with his armour, and he put an helmet of brass upon his head; also he armed him with a coat of mail.***

***And David girded his sword upon his armour, and he assayed to go; for he had not proved it. And David said unto Saul, I cannot go with these; for I have not proved them. And David put them off him.***

Saul was over seven feet tall, and David was just a boy of about seventeen years old, probably about 5’6”, 130 pounds soaking wet. That must have been a pretty funny sight seeing David trying to get around in Saul's armour. But David didn't need Saul's armour; he had God's armour. We don't need to equip ourselves with the things of the world, but with the spiritual armour God has for us in Ephesians 6.

***And he took his staff in his hand, and chose him five smooth stones out of the brook, and put them in a shepherd's bag which he had, even in a scrip; and his sling was in his hand: and he drew near to the Philistine.***

**1Samuel 17:40**

Many people wonder why David picked up five stones. Most preachers, when they preach this message, will say David chose five stones because he intended to fight it out to the bitter end and he was prepared in case he missed the first time. That is NOT the reason. David was trusting God to win the battle for him, and had complete faith that God could win it with ONE stone. If you read 2Samuel 21 you will find Goliath had four sons by his mother. David intended to make it a family affair, and go five for five. Now look at verses 41-42:

***And the Philistine came on and drew near unto David; and the man that bare the shield went before him.***

***And when the Philistine looked about, and saw David, he disdained him: for he was but a youth, and ruddy, and of a fair countenance.***

The term “ruddy and of a fair countenance” is used in the Song of Solomon

## Chapter 14 - Cross-Referencing

prophetically describing the Lord Jesus Christ. Let's continue with verses 43-44:

***And the Philistine said unto David, Am I a dog, that thou comest to me with staves? And the Philistine cursed David by his gods.***

***And the Philistine said to David, Come to me, and I will give thy flesh unto the fowls of the air, and to the beasts of the field.***

Goliath made a very interesting statement there. That is precisely what will happen to the Antichrist and his troops in Revelation 19 at the supper of the great God.

***Then said David to the Philistine, Thou comest to me with a sword, and with a spear, and with a shield: but I come to thee in the name of the Lord of hosts, the God of the armies of Israel, whom thou hast defied.***

**1Samuel 17:45**

Notice Goliath comes to David with three pieces of armour: a sword, a spear, and a shield. Where is his helmet? The helmet in Ephesians 6 is a “helmet of salvation”. Goliath pictures an unsaved man. When David hit him with the rock, it hit him right between the eyes - right where the helmet should have been.

Let go on, verses 46-47:

***This day will the Lord deliver thee into mine hand; and I will smite thee, and take thine head from thee; and I will give the carcasses of the host of the Philistines this day unto the fowls of the air, and to the wild beasts of the earth; that all the earth may know that there is a God in Israel.***

***And all this assembly shall know that the Lord saveth not with sword and spear: for the battle is the Lord's, and he will give you into our hands.***

David turns Goliath's statement around to make it right, then gives the glory to God, just as Jesus did, and just as we are supposed to do. Continuing in verse 48:

***And it came to pass, when the Philistine arose, and came and drew nigh to meet David, that David hasted, and ran toward the army to meet the Philistine.***

Back in verse 41, it said Goliath drew near to David; here it says he arose. He must have sat down on the job. He took one look at David and sat down for a big hee-haw and took off his helmet. But David RAN head first into the battle facing the enemy, “looking unto Jesus the author and finisher of our faith”. Look at verse 49:

***And David put his hand in his bag, and took thence a stone, and slang it, and smote the Philistine in his forehead, that the stone sunk into his***

***forehead; and he fell upon his face to the earth.***

Goliath got a head wound, just like the Antichrist, then fell on his face just like the false god of the Philistines, Dagon, did in an earlier chapter in 1Samuel. (Dagon was the false god Goliath cursed David by in verse 43.) Now look at verses 50-51:

***So David prevailed over the Philistine with a sling and with a stone, and smote the Philistine, and slew him; but there was no sword in the hand of David.***

***Therefore David ran, and stood upon the Philistine, and took his sword, and drew it out of the sheath thereof, and slew him, and cut off his head therewith. And when the Philistines saw their champion was dead, they fled.***

David did not kill Goliath with the stone, he just knocked him out, then killed him by cutting off his head with a sword. Revelation 19:11 says the Lord wins the battle at the second coming with a sword. All of those seemingly insignificant little details contribute to the story and teach you the great spiritual truths found in the word of God. Every detail is important, every word is placed there by God for a purpose, and it is the types that make it come alive.

The more you learn about types, the more you will learn about the Bible. The reason most preachers are so dull is because all they have is a historical and inspirational understanding of the Bible, and don't understand how types can show you so many great truths. They are afraid of the Old Testament because they don't understand it. It is the types that make it come alive.

Someone once said the Old Testament is like a dark art gallery. You walk down the halls and can't see anything. The New Testament is like a flashlight which helps you see the pictures. The New Testament helps you see the pictures in the Old Testament, and there are thousands of them there.

Don't take types all the way, though. David is a type of Christ, true. Goliath is a type of the Antichrist, true. But David committed adultery and murder. Jesus was never guilty of that. Just take them as far as you can where it is CLEAR, then drop it; don't push them too far.

One thing you should realize is that in order to get the most out of the Bible, you need to get some books outside the Bible written by men who believe it and know it well to help you along the way. That is the purpose of this book.

Let me suggest one of these authors: Arthur W. Pink. Mr. Pink is without doubt the greatest writer in the world when it comes to types. But let me caution you - no matter who you read, they will have some errors. (There are undoubtedly some

## Chapter 14 - Cross-Referencing

errors in this book, but by the grace of God, I have tried to give you my very best.) There is only one perfect book in the world, and that is the word of God.

Mr. Pink was a follower of John Calvin, and believed only the “elect” could get saved. He believed it was predetermined by God in eternity past before Genesis 1:1 who the “elect” were, and if you were not one of the elect, you couldn't get saved no matter how much you tried. That is not true. The Bible says salvation is available to **ALL**. Not all will accept, but it is available. **Revelation 22:17** says:

***And the Spirit and the bride say, Come. And let him that heareth say, Come. And let him that is athirst come. And whosoever will; let him take the water of life freely.***

Anyone can be saved if they come to Jesus Christ. **John 3:16** says:

***For God so loved the world, that he gave his only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life.***

It does not say “whosoever of the elect”, it says whosoever - that means anyone, including you. As you read Mr. Pink's books, you will encounter this error occasionally. As I said, he is the greatest writer on TYPES, not necessarily on doctrine. Please keep this in mind if you ever read any of his books.

Mr. Pink wrote a series of books entitled Gleanings which is the classic work on types in history. Any Christian bookstore should be able to get them for you if they don't have them in stock.

### **Event References**

The third classification I have for references are events. Let me give you some examples. For instance, if someone asks me about the second coming of Jesus Christ, I have two major places that come to mind immediately. One is Revelation 19 in the New Testament, and the other is Isaiah 63 in the Old Testament. In Isaiah 63 I have no less than thirty major references marked which will tell me almost anything I need to know about any major aspect of the second coming. Of course, this is the theme of the Bible, so there is no way to catalogue every verse on the subject in one place. Out of 31,102 verses in the Bible, probably half of them can give you something on this subject. Two-thirds of the Old Testament prophecies are on the second coming, and are yet to be fulfilled. I use a few major places on this subject and build a chain reference system from there.

My references on the Millennium are all centered in Ezekiel 40 through 48. That portion of the word of God is the definitive on the Millennium. Everything in those nine chapters deals with that time period, and every reference from other places in the Bible can be put in there somewhere. The crucifixion can be laid out

in any one of the four gospel accounts you wish; mine is in Matthew 27. There is as much information on the crucifixion in the Old Testament as there is in the New, but for clarity in my mind, I have it all catalogued in Matthew 27, and I can go to that one place and get what I need from there.

In my notes, the rapture of the church is anchored in Revelation 4. 1Thessalonians 4:13-18 is also a good place.

The key to referencing these events is to find a central place in the Bible where you can build your information, and then reference from there in a chain method.

### **Historical References**

Next are historical references. In the Old Scofield Bible, Ussher's chronology is in the footnotes. Archbishop Ussher took the genealogies in the Bible and laid them out to figure the dates, and it is as correct a chronology as you will ever get. Of course, I am suggesting a work by a Roman Catholic Archbishop! But he believed the Bible as far as historical dates were concerned. I really don't care about the rest of his work; when someone believes the Bible, he is right at that point.

If you don't have an Old Scofield reference Bible, or can't get one, then get Ussher's chronology, and begin in Genesis and put his dates in the margins. That will help you a great deal when you read the Old Testament. It will be a lot easier to understand what is going on historically if you have those dates. That may not seem important to you now, but give it some time, and it will.

Of course, today Ussher's chronology is not accepted by the "scholars". You might have figured that; anything but believe the Bible.

Now, you don't want to spend the rest of your life studying dates in the Bible. They are important, but not the most important thing. As time goes on, they will become more second nature to you. A book titled Haley's Bible Handbook is also a good book for historical information.

### **Context References**

The last type of reference I have is verse and chapter contexts. The context of a particular verse or chapter in the word of God is absolutely critical. If you will remember the rules of Bible study I detailed in a previous chapter, the very first rule was:

**Before you ask what a verse means, determine the context.**

Without the proper context, the Bible does not make sense. Every book of the

## Chapter 14 - Cross-Referencing

Bible has a basic doctrinal, historical, and inspirational context. In an earlier chapter, we studied this for the book of Job. Job doctrinally pictures the tribulation period. Historically it is a story of events which actually happened to a man named Job. Inspirationally it shows us how to deal with suffering, persecution, and trials of our faith. At the beginning of Job in your Bible, you can note these applications and contexts right next to the title of the book. You can do this with each book of the Bible.

This is probably the last of the five classifications of references which you will get to any extent. Doctrinal context is the hardest thing to understand properly. What I showed you earlier about David and Goliath being a picture of the battle of Armageddon and of our spiritual warfare, in Christ, took me a long time to dig out completely. Those things come slow and hard; God won't dump it all on you at once. But once you get it, you won't get messed up in the future.

Not only do the books of the Bible have general contexts, so do chapters, portions of chapters, and even verses. As you remember from a previous chapter on key words, the context of many passages can be established by a few key words and phrases such as "that day", "the day of the Lord", "those days", etc. As you study and determine the context of various portions of the word of God, it helps to mark them in the margins to keep you aware of them as you read in the future. Now these are the major types of references I use in my margin notes. Again, you don't necessarily have to copy my methods exactly - use what works best for you. The key is making sure you have a neat, orderly system of notes so you can find the information you need when it is needed. As you grow in grace and in the knowledge of our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ, you will compile tons of Bible information. If you don't have some way of getting access to that information, your studies will not bear the fruit God intends for them to bear in your life.

## Chapter 15

### The Conclusion - Blessed is the Man

*Blessed is the man that walketh not in the counsel of the ungodly, nor standeth in the way of sinners, nor sitteth in the seat of the scornful.*

*But his delight is in the law of the Lord; and in his law doth he meditate day and night.*

*And he shall be like a tree planted by the rivers of water, that bringeth forth his fruit in his season; his leaf also shall not wither; and whatsoever he doeth shall prosper.*

**Psalm 1:1-3**

As we have seen earlier, there are e wisdom books in the Old Testament. Someone once categorized them as follows:

**Job presents the sad man.**

**Proverbs details the wise man.**

**Ecclesiastes shows us the worldly man.**

**Song of Solomon pictures the heavenly man.**

**Psalms gives us the happy man.**

I guess everyone's goal in life is to be happy. I deal with people all day long in counseling situations, and that is the bottom line in practically every case I work with. It is hard to be happy in a world with so many problems and heartaches as ours. In man's great search for happiness in his own way, he falls so short because he has no idea where true happiness is found. Even as Christians we fall into the same trap because we go about our lives doing things naturally, thinking in a natural, secular way...never really plugging in to the only true source of happiness in the universe. The passage above, together with the 119th Psalm, as well as the entire book of Psalms, records for us that true source of happiness.

## Chapter 15 - The Conclusion - Blessed is the Man

Most commentators on the book of Psalms say Psalm 1 is the prelude to the rest of the book of Psalms. That may be true, but it goes much further than that. Psalm 1 is the prelude to life. In the book of Psalms, just as in the book of Proverbs, we have portrayed for us two men: a wise man, and a foolish man; a happy man, and a sad man. As you read this book, you are one of those two men. Every person you will ever deal with in life is one of those two men.

The book of Psalms is one of the most unique books in the Bible. It does for us what no other book in the Bible can because it contains every emotion a human being can ever experience. Every trial and heartache, every victory, and every desire of our hearts is found in the book of Psalms. And despite all of the tragedy and misery of the book, there is woven through it the peace of God that passeth all understand through an intimate relationship with the Lord Jesus Christ.

Now look at the first verse of Psalms; it begins, “Blessed is the man...” You can't get past the first word in the Psalms without finding out that God wants to bless someone. The word “blessed” appears over sixty times in the Psalms. Yet as we read the rest of verse 1, it becomes clear that God will only bless the man who abstains from the world system which is so contrary to what the Lord Jesus Christ is. There are no blessings from God for the man who will not break fellowship with the unfruitful works of darkness and live a lifestyle pleasing to God. In Christianity, many people think they can get saved, and then do what they want to do; and go where they want to go, and it is all right. On one side are the legalists who keep all sorts of rules to maintain their spirituality, and on the other side are those who claim they are “liberated” in Christ and now have the freedom to do whatever their little hearts desire. Neither group has any concept of what God has done for them in Christ. God never put a New Testament believer under any set of rules, yet the liberty given to the Christian is NOT for him to do what he wants to do. Liberty in Christ is so the Christian can serve God and live a lifestyle pleasing to God without any of the confines of the law. Liberty is not license to do wrong, but freedom to do right.

The man of Psalm 1 is blessed because of what he does not do. He is blessed because he stays away from the world system and all of its trappings and allurements. He is blessed because he has learned to love the things God loves and hate the things God hates. That is what your attitude of heart should be toward the things of God. Now look at verse one again:

***Blessed is the man that walketh not in the counsel of the ungodly, nor standeth in the way of sinners, nor sitteth in the seat of the scornful.***

Do you see the progression? Once a man ceases to walk with God and begins to



walk with the world, a natural downward progression takes place. A Christian's life is nothing more than walking in the light as the Lord Jesus Christ is in the light, having fellowship with Him; but when he ceases to walk in that light, an automatic downward spiral takes place despite any and all efforts on the man's part to prevent it. Sin never leaves you better than it finds you. Once you break fellowship with God, you don't just kind of float along in neutral for awhile until things get fixed up, you go DOWN. When a man ceases to walk with God, he automatically begins to walk with the wrong crowd. Pretty soon he begins to stand with them, and after awhile he sits down with them; and even though he may be saved, you can't tell the difference between him and any unsaved hell-bound sinner in the world. Now look at verse two:

***But his delight is in the law of the Lord; and in his law doth he meditate day and night.***

This man is blessed because of what he delights himself in. So many of God's people are under such false delusions today. The average Christian today thinks he is blessed simply because he goes to church on Sunday, and drops a buck in the offering plate, and prays before he stuffs his face full of food. Many Christians think they are blessed because they live in America and have a nice bank account and two cars in the garage. My friend, the only blessings in life are when you delight yourself in the word of God. For Americans, that is very difficult to do with all of our luxuries. We are famous for delighting ourselves in everything in this world. There is only one thing in which God wants us to delight ourselves: His Book. Most Christians have no concept of just spending an entire day with no television, no radio, no newspapers, no fun and games, and no "excitement", just a day of sitting down with nothing but the word of God and delighting yourself in the pages of that precious book. You say, "How boring!" I thought the Devil would tell you that. The reason most people's lives are so full of problems is they have never learned to delight themselves in the word of God.

Recently I dealt with a young lady in a counseling situation who was going through the trauma of being dumped by her boyfriend. She sat in my office with tears streaming down her face saying how she loved him so much, and just wanted to be with him so badly, and how her life was so empty without him, and how she just couldn't live without him, and on and on like that for thirty minutes straight. This girl was a Christian! All I could think was, "This ought to be a Christian's attitude toward the Lord Jesus Christ!"

Her problem was the same problem anyone else in the world has. Once you stop delighting yourself in the law of the Lord and cease having daily intimate

## Chapter 15 - The Conclusion - Blessed is the Man

fellowship with the Lord Jesus Christ, and you make things - other people, circumstances, bank accounts, and all the other things of the world - your delight, then you are in for a fall because those things don't last and they can never satisfy. I want you to know on the authority of the word of God that there is **NOTHING** in this world that can satisfy the empty place in your soul except the Lord Jesus Christ as you walk with Him through the pages of His word. Any problem anyone has today can be dealt with by simply delighting in the things of God.

People say all the time that the Bible is the greatest book ever written, and I say, "Amen." They talk about how the Bible is the best seller of all time, and it is. The Bible has outsold every other book in existence many times over, and there is hardly a household in America without one, and hardly a Christian household without three or four copies...yet it is undoubtedly the least read book in this country. Most people think all they need is a Bible on their coffee table for God to bless them. Most Christians think if they can carry the same Bible to church for ten years without it falling apart, they have accomplished some great and notable feat. That is not true! A man is blessed **ONLY** as he delights himself in the word of God.

Verse 2 says a man is blessed by meditating in the word of God day and night. I love to read stories about the great preachers of the 18th and 19th centuries like John Wesley, George Whitefield, and Jonathan Edwards. Many of them would ride on horseback seven or eight hours a day, preach three or four times a day, pray five hours a day, and study their Bible six or seven hours a day. As a young preacher wanting to let God use me, I would read those stories and think, "That can't be! There aren't that many hours in a day!"

Then I really began to understand prayer and Bible study. I could understand how they did that by realizing they talked to God all day long. They simply maintained communication with God in everything they did. They meditated day and night in the word of God, and as a result, became intimately personal with the Lord Jesus Christ and His book.

Whenever I go back to my hometown of Canton, Ohio, I always make it a point to drive past the house where I grew up. I lived there for over twenty years, and I like to just take a little time and reflect on the things I went through during those years. Someone else lives there now, and I can't go inside, but I look at the changes they made on the outside of the house and I know they have made all kinds of changes on the inside also. (They probably had to gut the place after I lived there by myself for five years.) As I look at that house some ten years later, even though it is totally changed, I still see it as it was when I lived there. If I were blind, I could still get around that house just fine and never fall down the steps one

time. I could find the bathroom, or the kitchen, or my bedroom without any trouble. I could do that because I am intimately familiar with every part of that house. Why? Because I lived there.

We should be the same way with the word of God. The question is: WHERE HAVE YOU BEEN LIVING? Have you been living in the pages of the precious word of God? Or have you been living in the newspaper, or in the magazines, or in the romance novels, or the funny papers, or the editorials, or the sports page, or worse yet, in the idiot box in the corner of your living room? I wonder how many people in Kansas City could name the starting line-up for the Kansas City Royals, but couldn't name the twelve apostles.

The problem is they have been living somewhere other than where God wants them to live.

Most Christians can live a victorious Christian life as long as there are no major problems. As long as you have a job and your kids are healthy and everything is going fine, it is easy to praise God. But when a problem comes up in your life, do you know where to go in the word of God to find the answers? When tragedy befalls most of God's people, they fall apart because they have never learned to delight themselves in the word of God. Instead they have delighted themselves in everything else the world has to offer. Most of you could go to work tomorrow, and except for safety considerations, you could do your job blindfolded. Most ladies could bake an apple pie from scratch without ever referring to the recipe because they have done it so many times. Why, in God's name, can't it be the same with the word of God, the most precious thing in all of existence? Most people can't get past two chapters in the word of God without falling asleep or giving up because it is "boring". The reason is they have been living somewhere else.

As I said in chapter 1, and have said over and over for years:

**The key to learning the Bible is LOVING the Bible.**

You cannot learn it by studying it, although you will have to study it. You cannot learn it by reading it, although you will have to read it. There are Jehovah's Witnesses, Mormons and others who study and study, and read and read, and are on their way to Hell with no idea of what the Bible is about. Do you **LOVE** the Bible? Do you understand that you just can't live without that book? Are you living in that book? Are you walking in the light as He is in the light? Is that book the very essence of your being? Is everything in your life wrapped around the

## Chapter 15 - The Conclusion - Blessed is the Man

pages of the word of God? Are you just as familiar with the word of God as you are with the home you have lived in for twenty years or the job you have had for thirty years? Why not? Look at verse 3:

***And he shall be like a tree planted by the rivers of water, that bringeth forth his fruit in his season; his leaf also shall not wither; and whatsoever he doeth shall prosper.***

Sometime on a rainy Saturday afternoon when you have nothing else to do, get about five or six commentaries on the book of Psalms. (Borrow them, don't buy them; they probably aren't worth the paper they are written on.) Look up Psalm 1:3 in those commentaries and see what everyone says about that river of waters. When the commentators come to this verse, they suddenly go into a fit of temporary biblical insanity. Suddenly this river becomes maybe the Jordan, or maybe the Euphrates, or maybe the Damascus, because, "...of course, in biblical times these were the rivers of that geographical region so therefore the writer of Psalms is making reference to one of these great bodies of water which played such a prominent role in the lives of the great saints of the Old Testament, and now that we have fully expounded the text, let us boldly move on to the next verse and confess that we don't have the slightest idea what we are talking about..."

You don't need any commentary on the face of the earth to tell you what the tree or the river of Psalm 1:3 is, all you need is THE commentary, the word of God. Ezekiel chapters 40 through 48 contain the greatest account of the Millennial reign of Christ in the Bible. Every detail of that time is given in those 9 chapters, and, lo and behold, in chapter 47 there appears a tree planted by a river of water. We studied earlier how men are likened to trees in the Bible. Someone may say I am taking things and stretching them too far...well, have you ever traced your family TREE? At one point in the book of Luke a blind man got healed, and the Lord asked him what he saw. He replied, "I see men walking around like trees." The Antichrist is called a great bay tree in the book of Ezekiel. The Bible says when you cease to walk with the world and begin to delight yourself in the things of God, you become like a tree planted by the river of water. **Proverbs 11:30** says:

***The fruit of the righteous is a tree of life; and he that winneth souls is wise.***

**Jeremiah 17:7-8** says:

***Blessed is the man that trusteth in the Lord, and whose hope the Lord is. For he shall be as a tree planted by the waters, and that spreadeth out her roots by the river, and shall not see when heat cometh, but her leaf shall***

***be green; and shall not be careful in the year of drought, neither shall cease from yielding fruit.***

As that tree planted by the river of waters, you must realize there is no fruit in your life until you get your roots down by the water. Of course, the water suggests for us the Holy Spirit of God in our lives. It is also a type of the word of God in Isaiah 55, coupled with the Holy Spirit, transforming our lives as we delight ourselves in the things of God, and cease to walk in the things of the world. A man like that shall be blessed, and he shall be like a tree planted by the river of waters.

Revelation 22 says that tree is for the healing of the nations. What will heal this nation as well as any nation on the face of this earth is the clear, plain, hard preaching of the word of God. The fruit of the tree of life in the Millennium heals the nations, and the fruit of your life through the word of God in this age will heal any nation. It will change kings and governments and bring them to the place where God can bless them because they honor His word. Every time the nation of Israel was in apostasy in the Old Testament, God sent them prophets to preach the living word of the living God which produced fruit. Why is it we as Christians get so caught up in all the things outside the Bible? We picket 7-11 and the abortion clinics and all that stuff when that is not the solution. Sure, I am against pornography, but the way to stop it is not through picketing or through legislation: just preach the word of God, and get Christians to quit buying the stuff and the problem will be solved. The solution to the abortion problem is to preach the word of God to young men and women, get their hearts right with God, and they will abstain from sex and put it in its proper place in the marital relationship.

The Biblical process is simple: 1) come out from the world system; and 2) delight yourself in the things God delights in. The result - you will bear fruit pleasing unto God. David said in Psalm 119:

***O how love I thy law! it is my meditation all the day.*** Psalm 119:97

***I have rejoiced in the way of thy testimonies, as much as in all riches.***  
Psalm 119:14

***I rejoice at thy word, as one that findeth great spoil.*** Psalm 119:162

***Therefore I love thy commandments above gold; yea, above fine gold.***  
Psalm 119:127

David had a perfect heart attitude toward the word of God. Do you love it that much? Now before you say amen and get all full of goose bumps, let me ask you a question: How many times did you read it through last year? Let me ask another question - the average American spends about one thousand hours per year

## Chapter 15 - The Conclusion - Blessed is the Man

watching TV. That is about three hours per day. Did you spend one thousand hours in the word of God last year?

Now look at the middle of verse 3: "...[he] **bringeth forth his fruit in his season**..." There is a season to your fruit bearing. I don't know how long God has given you on this earth, but I do know this - most of God's people are living their lives like they are going to live forever right here. God has a plan for your life on this earth! The Bible says you are like a tree. God made the trees in Genesis...have you ever really studied those trees? The Bible says they are seed bearing trees: they grow up, drop seeds, and bear fruit. The seeds bring forth other trees which bear more fruit and bring forth more trees. It is a natural, continual process. You are like a tree planted by the river of waters, and as you delight yourself in the word of God and cease to walk with the world, you will bear fruit, but the Bible says there is a season to that fruit bearing. Why is it that God's people continue to live their lives like there is some reason or purpose in life other than bearing fruit?

I have never been much of an athlete. We have an athletic ministry in our class where we play softball in the summer and basketball in the winter, and I coach a team every year because I learned a long time ago that was the only way I would get to play. When I was a junior in High School, the coach put up a notice for try-outs for basketball, so I thought I would give it a go. At the first practice, everyone else was doing lay-ups while I was running around doing forty foot hook shots, hitting people in the bleachers, and just having a good time. I was the hot-dog type, but without any talent, just trying to get the coach to notice me. After about fifteen minutes of this, the coach called me over. "Hey, Alexander, come here."

Everyone stopped and looked at me and I thought, "He has recognized my talent." So I swaggered up to him and said, "Yeah, coach, what do you need?" I was thinking he was going to ask me to start in the big game.

He looked at me and said, "Alexander, don't you ever get tired of being a jerk?"

As a young kid, sixteen years old, that crushed me. But I stood there for a minute, thought about that and said, "Yeah, I guess I am tired of being a jerk."

Let me ask you a question - aren't you tired of being a jerk in God's sight? I ask that question with all the love in my heart for you. Some of you may have been saved for five, ten, fifteen years, and you have never led anybody to the Lord Jesus Christ; doesn't that eat on you? Don't you ever get tired of the same old humdrum life apart from the miracles of God through an intimate relationship with the Lord Jesus Christ? Maybe in the midst of your successful career, or in all the things you

hold dear, does God ever put His finger on you and touch your heart about that? Does it ever bother you that in ten or fifteen years you have never borne fruit? God's people have only one purpose in life: to reproduce themselves - and yet we give the wildest excuses for not doing it. Some of you reading this are justifying yourself right now for your own lack of fruit bearing by the following excuses:

“Well, he doesn't understand my job situation. They won't let me witness at work.”

“Why, I don't know anyone. I am new in town.”

“Well, I just don't have an outgoing personality.”

When it comes to bearing fruit in your life, your external circumstances have nothing to do with it. You would have an excuse if your soul winning and fruit bearing depended on your job, or your personality, or your circumstances, but it does not. It only depends upon your personal, intimate relationship with the Holy Spirit of God as you delight yourself in the word of God. The question is simple: Where are you living? What are you delighting yourself in? Look at the rest of verse 3:

***..His leaf also shall not wither; and whatsoever he doeth shall prosper.***

We claim in Christianity to have all the answers to the problems of life. We hold up the Bible as the final authority and the key to a victorious life, and tell people to come to Jesus because He can meet their needs in life, yet God's people live the most miserable, defeated lives on the face of the earth. There are Buddhists, Catholics, Mormons, Jehovah's Witnesses, and scores of others who in their false sense of security are happier than most of God's people who have the truth. Unsaved people are lost, without hope, and on their way to an eternity in the Lake of Fire...and yet most of them live a more victorious life than the average child of God who will someday be perfectly conformed to the image of the Lord Jesus Christ and live forever with Him in paradise. I don't understand it. The reason is that Christians all over this country think their Christianity is based on them going to church on Sunday, and going on visitation, and tithing, and all of the external things that go along with “Fundamental Christianity.” NO!

**Christianity is walking in the light as He is in the light. It is a personal, living relationship with a personal, living Saviour.**

When you love Him more than anyone or anything in this world, then the natural by-product is a fruitful life that remains fruitful; your leaf will never wither, and

## Chapter 15 - The Conclusion - Blessed is the Man

whatsoever you do will prosper.

Instead of living victorious Christian lives, we have developed a set of cute clichés and seminars to deal with the problems we have created by not loving the Lord Jesus Christ. Now we have things like “mid-life crisis.” “Mid-life crisis” is nothing but a cop-out for not fulfilling your life in the Lord Jesus Christ. It is impossible to be depressed, or go through a “mid-life crisis” when you have the miracles of God in your life through an intimate relationship with the God of the universe. You say Elijah had a fit of depression; yes, and he was out of fellowship with God at the time. David went through deep depression, but he too was out of fellowship with God because of sin. In every case, depression and problems come in because we break fellowship with God and begin delighting ourselves in everything else other than Him and His precious book.

As a child of God, there should be no reason for any depression in your life. The God we serve is the very one who on eternity's morning brought this entire universe into existence with the spoken word. John chapter 1 says that “***Word was made flesh and dwelt among us***” in the person of the Lord Jesus Christ, the incarnate Word of God. He suffered and bled and died for our sins and was raised from the dead by the power of the Holy Spirit of God, and after ascending to the Father, sent that same Holy Spirit to live inside our mortal bodies. The Bible says our bodies are the temple of the Holy Ghost. Paul said, speaking of the Holy Spirit, that we have this treasure in earthen vessels that the excellency of the power may be of God and not of us. The very same power of the spoken word of God which created the universe from nothing lives inside your body if you are saved. That very same Word of God has been handed to you in written form, preserved infallible by the Holy Spirit who authored it, and who promised to teach it to you and lead you and empower you to serve Him.

With that kind of power at your disposal, how can you ever be depressed or defeated? The rest is up to you. The only person who can stand in the way of your victorious life in Jesus Christ is YOU. I have poured out my heart to you in this book about LOVING the word of God. If all you have learned from this book is to love the Bible, then I have accomplished my purpose; the rest will come in time. **JUST LOVE THE BOOK!**

***Oh how love I thy law! it is my meditation all the day***

**Psalm 119:97**

***I hate vain thoughts: but thy law do I love.***

**Psalm 119:113**



*I rejoice at thy word, as one that findeth great spoil.*

**Psalm 119:162**

*Great peace have they which love thy law: and nothing shall offend them.*

**Psalm 119:165**

*My soul hath kept thy testimonies; and I love them exceedingly.*

**Psalm 119:167**

*I have rejoiced in the way of thy testimonies, as much as in all riches.*

**Psalm 119:14**

*Thy testimonies also are my delight and my counsellors.*

**Psalm 119:24**

*And I will delight myself in thy commandments, which I have loved.*

**Psalm 119:47**

*The law of thy mouth is better unto me than thousands of gold and silver.*

**Psalm 119:72**

*Unless thy law had been my delights, I should then have perished in mine affliction.*

**Psalm 119:92**

*Thy testimonies have I taken as an heritage for ever: for they are the rejoicing of my heart.*

**Psalm 119:111**

*Thy word is very pure: therefore thy servant loveth it.*

**Psalm 119:140**

*Therefore I love thy commandments above gold; yea, above fine gold.*

**Psalm 119:127**

## Chapter 15 - The Conclusion - Blessed is the Man

# APPENDIX A

## The Rules of Bible Study

1. Before you ask what a verse means, determine the **CONTEXT**.
2. The Bible is written to three groups of people: Jews, Gentiles, and the Church.
3. The Bible has proper divisions, and you must put those divisions in their right places.
4. All scripture has three applications: Doctrinal, Historical, and Inspirational.
5. God chooses the exact words He wants to use and the events recorded to show you something.
6. God has three distinct plans revealed in His word: He has a plan for the Universe, for the Earth, and for your life.
7. The invisible things of God can be seen by studying the things God made.
8. The Bible is of no private interpretation. All “interpretations” must be done by comparing scripture with scripture.
9. The **INDIVIDUAL WORDS** in the Bible are the key to the Bible.
10. Always give the Bible the benefit of the doubt.
11. Never forget the consistency of the Bible.
12. Remember the “Law of First Mention.”
13. Always take a passage literally until it's impossible for you to take it literally.
14. Always be prepared to change whatever you have been taught or you have believed when it goes contrary to the Bible. Never make the Bible line up with what you believe; always line yourself up to what the Bible says.
15. Numbers are a major key in the Bible.



# APPENDIX B

## The Kingdom of God vs. The Kingdom of Heaven

Kingdom of God (Spiritual)	Approximate Dates	Historical/Biblical Reference	Kingdom of Heaven (Literal)
Under Control of Lucifer	?	Eternity Past (Gen. 1:1)	Under Control of Lucifer
	?	Fall of Lucifer (Gen. 1:2) (Isa. 14:12-19) (Eze. 28:11-19)	
Under Control of Adam	4004 BC	Adam Created (Gen. 1:26)	Under Control of Adam
Spiritual Kingdom forfeited. No spiritual Son of God on earth.	4001 BC	Fall of Adam (Gen. 3:6)	Remains under control of Adam and his descendents through Noah to Israel. History of Old Testament Jewish Nation.
	606 BC	Captivity of Jews (Daniel 1) (Jeremiah 39)	
		Period "between the Testaments" (Malachi - Matt.) NO KINGDOM PRESENT ON EARTH	Under control of Satan (Luke 4:5-7)
Kingdom "At Hand"	0	First Coming of Christ Matthew, Mark, Luke & John	Kingdom "At Hand" offered to Jews but rejected.
Kingdom remains on earth through Body of Christ.	35 AD	Final rejection by Jews of Stephen (Acts 7)	Kingdom remains under control of Satan. (Times of Gentiles)
Kingdom goes out with Church. No spiritual Son of God on earth.	Any Day Now	Rapture of Church (Rev. 4:1) (I Thess. 4:13-18)	False Kingdom of Heaven established by Antichrist.
		Tribulation Period (Rev. 4 - Rev. 19) NO KINGDOM PRESENT ON EARTH	
The King brings the Kingdom back in the glorified Church.	Approx. 2000 AD	Second Coming of Christ (Rev. 11:15) (Rev. 19:11-16)	The King brings in the Kingdom.
Kingdom in full manifestation as Church Age Saints rule with Christ.		Millennium (Eze. 40-48) (Rev. 20:1-6)	Kingdom in full manifestation with Jesus Christ on the Throne in Jerusalem.
	Approx. 3000 AD	White Throne Judgment (Rev. 20:11-15)	
The Body of Christ in Eternity. Reigning as Sons of God in glorified bodies.	Forever and Ever	Eternity Future (Rev. 21-22)	The Nation of Israel in Eternity populating the universe in the Kingdom of Heaven.

Not to Scale



# APPENDIX C

## Old Testament Survey

Genesis                      The book of beginnings. Establishes the beginnings of everything. Lays the foundation for the Kingdom of Heaven.

*The next four books give the outward structure of the Kingdom of Heaven. All take place at approximately the same time.*

Exodus                      Redemption by blood.  
Leviticus                    Establishment of Levitical Priesthood.  
Numbers                     Rebellion of Nation of Israel and trials in the wilderness.  
Deuteronomy                Second giving of the law due to rebellion and problems.

Joshua                      The Nation of Israel gets the land for the Kingdom of Heaven.

Judges                      The Nation of Israel is established through a system of Judges  
Ruth                         but goes into apostasy through their refusal to operate as a Theocracy.

1Samuel                    The Nation of Israel is established as a world power through  
2Samuel                    the reign of the Kings of Israel.  
1Kings                      The Kingdom of Heaven is in manifestation as a picture of  
the 2Kings                 future reign of Jesus Christ.  
1Chronicles                The chronology overlaps with 2Chronicles ending the  
2Chronicles                captivity of the Jews (606 BC) and the return to the land (536 BC). The Kingdom of Heaven goes out with the captivity in 606 BC.

*The next three books are historical accounts dealing with events taking place as the Jews returned from captivity in 536 BC. They also picture future events taking place as the Jews return from the dispersion to the land beginning in 1948 AD.*

Ezra                         The City of Jerusalem and Temple is rebuilt after the Jews return to the land (536 BC).

Nehemiah                 The Wall of Jerusalem is rebuilt.

Esther                      A wedding feast is held in the King's Palace.

*The next 5 books are the “Wisdom Literature.” Psalms was written primarily by David. Proverbs, Ecclesiastes, and Song of Solomon were written by Solomon. David and Solomon were the two greatest kings of Israel in the Old Testament.*

Job	The oldest book in the Bible. It pictures the persecution of Jews by the devil in the Tribulation.
Psalms	The Prayers of the Tribulation and a picture of the Second Coming of Christ.
Proverbs	Earthly wisdom critiqued by Solomon, the wisest man who ever lived.
Ecclesiastes	
Song of Solomon	

*Ezra (return to land), Nehemiah (rebuilding the city and walls), Esther (marriage in the King's Palace), Job (Tribulation), and Psalms (2nd Coming of Christ) are placed in this order by the Holy Spirit to define and picture the premillennial coming of the Lord Jesus Christ.*

*A detailed breakdown of the prophets was given in Chapter 6, Old Testament Survey. The major theme of the writings of the prophets is the events surrounding the Second Coming of Jesus Christ.*

Isaiah	Major Prophets
Jeremiah	
Lamentations	
Ezekiel	
Daniel	
Hosea	Minor Prophets
Joel	
Amos	
Obadiah	
Jonah	
Micah	
Nahum	
Habakkuk	
Zephaniah	
Haggai	
Zechariah	
Malachi	



# APPENDIX D

## New Testament Survey

Three Divisions	Books of New Testament	Seven Divisions
Transitional book from the Old Testament to the New Testament.	<b>MATTHEW</b>	These 4 books bridge the Old Testament to the New Testament and reveal the life and ministry of the Lord Jesus Christ.
	Mark Luke John	
Transitional book from the Jews to the Gentiles.	<b>ACTS</b>	A historical account of the events immediately after the ascension of Jesus Christ.
	Romans I Corinthians II Corinthians Galatians Ephesians Philippians Colossians I Thessalonians II Thessalonians	The doctrinal section on the Church Age. All books are addressed to churches.
	I Timothy II Timothy Titus Philemon	Personal instructions to Church Age Christians. All books are addressed to individual believers.
Transitional Book from the Church Age to the Tribulation.	<b>HEBREWS</b>	Transitional section from the Church Age to the Tribulation. <u>Primary</u> focus is Jewish although many spiritual principles are taught for the Church.
	James I Peter II Peter	
	I John II John III John	Instructions to the Church in the last days of the Church Age.
	Jude Revelation	The Tribulation period, 2nd Coming of Jesus Christ, Millennium, and Eternity future.



# APPENDIX E

## Key Words and Phrases

<b>Adversary</b>	- The Devil
<b>Arm/Right Arm</b>	- Jesus Christ (Satan counterfeits)
<b>Beast</b>	- The Antichrist
<b>Billows/Waves</b>	- Death
<b>Bride</b>	- Church in relation to Christ
<b>Bridegroom</b>	- Jesus Christ
<b>Brightness</b>	- Jesus Christ at 2nd advent
<b>Brimstone</b>	- Hell; Judgment of God
<b>Chaff</b>	- Unsaved people
<b>Christ Jesus</b>	- Function of the Lord seated at the right hand of God interceding for the Saints Clay - Man/Flesh
<b>Cloud</b>	- 2nd advent of Jesus Christ
<b>Council</b>	- Negative; Against the Lord Jesus Christ except Matthew 5:22
<b>Darkness/Thick Darkness</b>	- End of tribulation going into 2nd advent.
<b>Day: Day of Wrath</b>	- God's judgment at the 2nd advent
<b>Last Days</b>	- Last 3,000 years of history (church age and millennium). Also, occasionally refers to the end of a dispensation.
<b>That Day/The Day/The Day of the Lord</b>	- 2nd advent of Jesus Christ
<b>Those Days</b>	- Tribulation
<b>Three Days/Third Day</b>	- Power of resurrection
<b>Deep</b>	- Death or judgment of God
<b>Desolation</b>	- End of Tribulation going into 2nd advent
<b>Destruction</b>	- End of Tribulation going into 2nd advent
<b>Distress</b>	- End of Tribulation going into 2nd advent
<b>Ears</b>	- Spiritual hearing/understanding
<b>Eyes</b>	- Spiritual sight/understanding

<b>Field</b>	- The world
<b>Fire</b>	- Hell; Judgment of God at 2nd advent of Christ
<b>The Floods</b>	- Death
<b>Flowers of Grass</b>	- The glory of man
<b>Gloominess</b>	- End of Tribulation -going into 2nd advent
<b>Gold</b>	- Deity of Jesus Christ
<b>Grass</b>	- Flesh
<b>Harvest</b>	- Rapture
<b>Holy Ghost</b>	- The indwelling spirit in a saved person
<b>Holy Spirit</b>	- The third person of the trinity and His work
<b>Innocent Blood</b>	- Jesus Christ
<b>Iron</b>	- Giants/Antichrist
<b>Jesus Christ</b>	- Function of the Lord as the earthly man who died for our sins
<b>Light</b>	- Word of God/Jesus Christ
<b>Man Child</b>	- Tribulation period
<b>Morning</b>	- 2nd advent of Jesus Christ
<b>Night</b>	- Church age
<b>Pearl</b>	- Church
<b>Precious Stones</b>	- God's people - Israel in the Old Testament - the Church in the New Testament
<b>Thy People</b>	- Israel
<b>Principalities and Powers</b>	- The devil and his angels
<b>Rain</b>	- Judgment of God (occasionally represents blessings of the Word of God)
<b>Former Rain</b>	- Midpoint of tribulation (3 1/2 years)
<b>Latter Rain</b>	- End of tribulation, going into the Millennium
<b>Remnant</b>	- Israel in the tribulation
<b>Right Hand</b>	- Jesus Christ (Satan counterfeits)

<b>Sea</b>	- Top of the universe
<b>Selah</b>	- Millennium
<b>Shadow of Death</b>	- Tribulation
<b>Sickle</b>	- Rapture
<b>Silver</b>	- The price of redemption
<b>Small and Great</b>	- Final judgment; Great White Throne
<b>Son of God</b>	- Jesus Christ in His spiritual relationship to the church or as King over the Kingdom of God. Context may refer to Son of God as either: Adam, angelic beings, or born again Christian in addition to Jesus Christ.
<b>Son of Man</b>	- Jesus Christ in His earthly relationship to the nation of Israel or as King over the Kingdom of Heaven; usually, a tribulation or 2nd advent reference.
<b>Strangers</b>	- Gentiles
<b>Threshing/Threshingfloor</b>	
	- Place and method of judgment of unsaved people
<b>Thunder</b>	- Voice of God
<b>Time of Trouble</b>	- Tribulation
<b>Truth</b>	- The word of God
<b>Turned the Captivity</b>	- End of tribulation going into 2nd advent
<b>Vessel</b>	- Human body
<b>Virgin</b>	- Church
<b>Virgin Daughter</b>	- Israel
<b>Virgins</b>	-144,000 witnesses in tribulation
<b>Wasteness</b>	- End of Tribulation going into 2nd advent
<b>Waters</b>	- Masses of people; occasionally refers to the deep
<b>Whirlwind</b>	- 2nd advent of Jesus Christ
<b>Wife</b>	- Israel in relation to God the Father
<b>Wilderness</b>	- Israel in tribulation
<b>Winepress</b>	- Battle of Armageddon at 2nd advent
<b>Without a Cause</b>	- Jesus Christ
<b>Woman in Travail</b>	- Israel at the end of tribulation
<b>Wrath</b>	- Judgment of God

